

HEIDENHAIN

HEIDENHAIN StateMonitor

Operating Instructions

English (en) 03/2020

Fundamentals

About this manual

These Operating Instructions are for StateMonitor Version 1.3.x.

Would you like any changes, or have you found any errors?

We continuously strive to improve our documentation for you. Please help us by sending your suggestions to the following e-mail address:

tnc-userdoc@heidenhain.de

Symbols and fonts used for marking text

In these instructions the following symbols and fonts are used for marking text:

Format	Meaning				
►	Identifies an action				
	Example:				
	Click the STORE button				
>	Identifies the result of an action				
	Example:				
	 StateMonitor lists all defined users in a table. 				
•	Identifies an item of a list				
	Example:				
	Error groups:				
	Machining				
	Programming				
	PLC				
	 General information 				
Bold	Identifies				
	Menus				
	Tabs				
	Screen buttons				
	Functions				
	Example:				
	Switch to the Settings menu				

Legal information

The license terms of DR. JOHANNES HEIDENHAIN GmbH apply to the use of the StateMonitor software.

StateMonitor contains components that are subject to copyrights held by znt Zentren für Neue Technologien GmbH, Lena-Christ-Straße 2, 82031 Grünwald, Germany. They are protected worldwide by copyright. Any unauthorized reproduction, use, or distribution of the components or parts thereof is not permitted and is subject to prosecution by criminal and civil law.

© znt Zentren für Neue Technologien GmbH

StateMonitor contains open-source software that is subject to special terms of use. The terms of use have priority over the license terms applicable to StateMonitor.

Table of contents

Table of contents

1	Safety and data protection	15
2	Installation	21
3	General usage information	37
4	Home menu	49
5	Machines menu	53
6	Messenger menu	89
7	Jobs menu	.101
8	Maintenance menu	
9	Evaluations menu	. 131
10	Settings menu	. 147
11	Software options and licenses	187
12	Network integration	. 193
	Machine parameters	
14	Help, tips and tricks	. 241

1	Safe	ty and data protection
	1.1	Intended use17
	1.2	Data security18
	1.3	Network connection security19
2	Inst	allation21
	2.1	Requirements
	2.2	Installation
	2.3	File structures
	2.4	Uninstalling26
	2.5	Licensing
		Activation
	2.6	Starting and ending29
	2.7	ControlCenter
3	Gen	eral usage information37
	3.1	Target group
	3.2	Opening and closing
	3.3	Login / Logout41
	3.4	Password42
	3.5	General settings
	3.6	Overview of the menus44
	3.7	Functions in tables and charts46
	3.8	Extending the functionality with software options47
4	Hon	ne menu
	4.1	Home menu
	4.2	Login / Logout

5	Mac	hines menu	. 53
	5.1	Machines menu	54
	5.2	Tile view submenu	. 55
	5.3	Status overview submenu	57
	5.4	Day view submenu	. 58
	5.5	Overview of machine statuses	59
	5.6	Machine status	61
		Displaying the live image	62
		Override settings	62
		Mode of operation	
		Program status	
		Current job (software option)	
		Active messenger status	
		Program statistics	
		Maintenance status (software option)	
		Machine statuses	
	5.7	Edit machine statuses submenu	
	5.8	FN38: Edit machine statuses	73
	5.9	Job terminal submenu (software option)	75
	5.10	Detailed view of the last 3 days submenu	. 79
	5.11	Machine alarms submenu	80
	5.12	Program run times submenu	82
	5.13	Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)	84
6	Mes	senger menu	. 89
	6.1	Messenger menu	90
	6.2	Event configurator submenu	. 91
	6.3	Notification profiles submenu	95
	6.4	Notifications submenu	. 97
	6.5	FN38: Sending messages from the NC program	99

7	Jobs	menu	101
	7.1	Jobs menu (software option)	102
		Create job submenu (software option)	
	7.3	Assign job submenu (software option)	105
	7.4	Adjust machining sequence submenu (software option)	106
	7.5	FN38: Job functions in the NC program	107

8	Maiı	ntenance menu111
	8.1	Maintenance menu (software option)112
	8.2	Tile view submenu (software option)113
	8.3	Status overview submenu (software option) 115
	8.4	Maintenance terminal submenu (software option)119
	8.5	Create maintenance step submenu (software option)123
	8.6	Create maintenance submenu (software option)126
9	Eval	uations menu
	9.1	Evaluations menu
	9.1 9.2	Evaluations menu
	9.2	Machine statuses submenu134
	9.2	Machine statuses submenu. 134 Key figures submenu. 136 Availability. 137 Utilization rate. 138
	9.2	Machine statuses submenu

9.5	Machine reports submenu	140
0.0	lab dinana anti-rational (a fitana anti-ra)	
9.6	Job times submenu (software option)	141
9.7	Signals submenu (software option)	142
9.8	Maintenances submenu (software option)	143
9.9	Time filter submenu	144

10	Setti	Settings menu		
	10.1	Settings menu	148	
	10.2	User settings submenu	149	
	10.3	User management submenu	150	
	10.4	Machines submenuMachines	.154	
		Create machine Edit machine Deleting machines.	.154 .158 .162	
	10.5	Add groups submenu	163	
	10.6	Machine mapping submenu	165	
	10.7	Statuses submenu	166	
	10.8	Messenger settings submenu	.169	
	10.9	File backup submenu	.171	
	10.10	External reporting DB submenu	175	
		Tables Table structures		
	10.11	Advanced submenu	184	
	10.12	Info submenu	. 185	

11	Soft	Software options and licenses 187		
	11.1	Software options and licenses	188	
	11.0	Requesting a license	100	
	T1.Z	Requesting a license	.189	
	11.3	Enabling the license	190	
		Enabling the license (online)	190	
		Enabling the license (Offline)	191	

		0	•	0	
12.2	SIK menu				 195
12.3	Enabling Option	18			
	•				
12.4	Network integrat				
	Network integration	on using fi	xed IP addresses		

HEIDENHAIN | StateMonitor | Operating Instructions | 03/2020

iTNC 530 beginning with software version 34049x-04 (HEROS 4)	200
iTNC 530 beginning with software version 34049x-05 (HEROS 4)	201
iTNC 530 beginning with software version 60642x-04 (HEROS 5) with HSCI	202
TNC 620 software version 34056x (HEROS 4) and TNC 320 software version 34055x (HEROS 4))204
TNC 640 / TNC 620 / TNC 320 / TNC 128 (HEROS 5)	206
CNC PILOT 640 beginning with software version 688946-01 (HEROS 5)	208
MANUALplus 620 starting with software versions 548328-05 and 54843x-01 (HEROS 5)	210
Network integration via DHCP	212
iTNC 530 starting with software version 34049x-04 (HEROS 4)	213
iTNC 530 starting with software version 34049x-05 (HEROS 4)	214
iTNC 530 starting with software version 60642x-04 (HEROS 5) with HSCI	215
TNC 640 / TNC 620 / TNC 320 / TNC 128	217
CNC PILOT 640 beginning with software version 688946-01 (HEROS 5)	219
MANUALplus 620 starting with software versions 548328-05 and 54843x-01 (HEROS 5)	221

13	Mac	hine parameters
		Control-specific machine parameters
	13.2	Parameters for HEIDENHAIN controls
	13.3	Parameters for other controls
	13.4	Modbus connection parameters233
	13.5	Example for connecting a control via Modbus234
		OPC UA connection parameters235
	13.7	MTConnect connection parameters237
	13.8	Example for connecting a control via MTConnect239

14	Help	, tips and tricks2	.41
	14.1	Operating Instructions in StateMonitor	242
	14.2	Special cases	243
	14.3	Any questions?	244



Safety and data protection

Notes in this documentation

Safety precautions

Comply with all safety precautions indicated in these instructions and in your machine tool builder's documentation!

Precautionary statements warn of hazards in handling software and devices and provide information on their prevention. They are classified according to the severity of the danger, and are divided into the following groups:

Danger indicates hazards for persons. If you do not follow the avoidance instructions, the hazard **will result in death or severe injury.**

AWARNING

Warning indicates hazards for persons. If you do not follow the avoidance instructions, the hazard **could result in death or serious injury**.

Caution indicates hazards for persons. If you do not follow the avoidance instructions, the hazard **could result in minor or moderate injury**.

NOTICE

Notice indicates danger to material or data. If you do not follow the avoidance instructions, the hazard **could result in property damage**.

Informational notes

Observe the informational notes provided in these instructions to ensure reliable and efficient operation of the software. In these instructions, you will find the following informational notes:



The information symbol indicates a **tip**. A tip provides additional or supplementary information.



The gear symbol indicates that the function described **depends on the machine**, e.g.

- Your machine must feature a certain software or hardware option
- The behavior of the functions depends on the configurable machine settings

The book symbol represents a **cross reference** to external documentation, e.g. the documentation of your machine tool builder or other supplier.

M

1.1 Intended use

The StateMonitor software may be used only in accordance with its proper and intended purpose.

The intended purpose is to centrally evaluate machine data in order to facilitate quick troubleshooting and to be able to use capacities more effectively.

Compliance with the proper and intended use of StateMonitor is the sole responsibility of the company using it.

Personal data and communication channels are subject to data protection. They must not be used for any other purposes or disclosed to third parties.

1.2 Data security

Access rights

Access to the data in StateMonitor is available only to those with access to the server or PC on which StateMonitor is installed.

Within StateMonitor, data usage can be limited by means of different rights. Only users with administrator rights have access to all the data.

In order for StateMonitor to be used, the end devices such as smartphones and tablets must be logged into the server as clients.

Because StateMonitor is a local client-server web application, no additional software or app must be installed on the respective end devices.

Further information: "User management submenu", Page 150

Sending notifications

Prerequisites:

i

- Enable TCP Ports 19000 to 19034 and 28001 in the Firewall
- Connection to an SMTP server

Further information: "Requirements", Page 22

If, on account of IT security reasons, your IT department does not permit the integration of the notification function (**Messenger**), then StateMonitor will not be able to send automatic notifications to users by e-mail.

In the **Messenger** menu, you can configure the events that trigger a notification and assign them to a notification profile.

Further information: "Messenger menu", Page 90

NOTICE

Caution: Data may be lost!

If you add too many notifications to the selection, the recipient's e-mail inbox may overflow. Further e-mails will then no longer be delivered.

- Create a separates mailbox for StateMonitor
- Select notifications very carefully

NOTICE

Caution: Data may be lost!

If StateMonitor sends too many notifications to recipients, then the e-mail provider may regard these notifications as spam. In this case, the recipient will no longer receive the notifications in his inbox.

Select notifications very carefully

1.3 Network connection security



Network connection of your controls should only be performed by IT specialists.

The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

NOTICE

Caution: Malfunction!

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

 Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



Installation

2.1 **Requirements**

Machine controls

You can use StateMonitor with the following HEIDENHAIN controls:

As of software version
As or software version
34049×-03
34056x-01
771841-01
340551-03
34059×-01
688945-01
68894x-01
548328-05
53895x-03, 73738x-01
510060-04
73502x-01

Depending on your software option, you can integrate other controls into StateMonitor using the following interfaces:

Interface	As of specification version
Modbus	Connect/Read
OPC UA	1.02.x
MTConnect	1.2

Further information: "Machines submenuMachines", Page 154 In order to use StateMonitor, the following prerequisites must be met:

The machine controls must be connected to the local company network

Further information: "Network integration", Page 199

Option #18 (HEIDENHAIN DNC interface) enabled on the **HEIDENHAIN** control Further information: "Enabling Option 18", Page 197

or

The corresponding option must be enabled on other controls

Hardware

For StateMonitor, you need a PC or server that meets the following minimum requirements:

- Dual core processor
- USB interface or network USB hub (dongle for full version)
- 2 GB of RAM and 10 GB of hard disk space for the StateMonitor application (basic version for five machine controls)

For each further machine control, you additionally need:

- 0.25GB RAM
- 2GB hard disk space

Thus, if you want to connect e.g. 15 machine controls, the PC or server requires 30 GB of hard disk space and 3.5 GB of RAM for StateMonitor.



If you want to connect 20 machine controls or more, HEIDENHAIN recommends that you use a PC or server with quad core processor.

Software

For StateMonitor, a Windows operating system (Windows 7 or higher or Windows Server 2008 R2) is required.

For communication, the following Firewall settings are required:

- Enable TCP ports 19000 to 19034 for communication with the machine controls
- Enable TCP port 28001 for communication with a PC, tablet, or smartphone



Have an IT specialist configure the firewall to enable the required TCP ports.

SMTP server

To use the **Messenger** notification function in StateMonitor, you must connect to an SMTP server acting as the e-mail output server. Contact your e-mail provider for the details needed to access the SMTP server.



Create a separate e-mail address for StateMonitor

Further information: "Messenger settings submenu", Page 169

2.2 Installation

Downloading the installer

To install StateMonitor, you need to download the installer from the HEIDENHAIN website (**www.heidenhain.de**).

- Download the current version from: www.heidenhain.de
- Navigate to the Download folder of your web browser
- Unpack the downloaded file with the extension in a temporary storage folder
- > The **Install StateMonitor.exe** installer is unpacked and available in the temporary folder.



StateMonitor is dongle-protected. The dongle and the installation instructions will be sent to you by mail. **Further information:** "Licensing", Page 27

Installing StateMonitor under Microsoft Windows

During the installation, both the StateMonitor application and the PostgreSQL database will be installed on the PC or server.



In order to perform the installation, you need to log in to Microsoft Windows as an administrator.

Proceed as follows in order to install StateMonitor:

- Double-click the Install StateMonitor.exe installer to start the installation.
- > The Setup Wizard opens.
- Select the setup language.
- ▶ Follow the setup wizard instructions.
- Accept the license conditions.
- Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation process.
- > StateMonitor has been installed successfully.

The following desktop icons are created during installation:

- ili.
- Activate StateMonitor
- StateMonitor website

Changing, repairing, and uninstalling StateMonitor

When you start the **Install StateMonitor.exe** installation file again, you are given the following possibilities:

Change

If you want to change the installed program functions, select **Change**.

Repair

Select **Repair** if StateMonitor is not working properly due to installation errors.

Remove

If you want to uninstall StateMonitor, select Remove.

2.3 File structures

The installation includes the following components:

- StateMonitor (application)
- ControlCenter
- HEIDENHAIN DNC
- WIBU CodeMeter
- OpenJDK (Java)
- PostgreSQL (database)

The installed files are structured as follows if the default settings are used:

- Installation folder
 - ..\<Program Files>\HEIDENHAIN\StateMonitor
 - Application
- Work directory ..\<ProgramData>\HEIDENHAIN\StateMonitor
 - Database
 - Machine images
 - Log files

8

Access to the files depends on the configuration of the access rights on the PC or server.

2.4 Uninstalling

Uninstalling StateMonitor

To uninstall StateMonitor, proceed as follows:

- Double-click to start the StateMonitor.exe installation file in the sm subfolder
- > The Setup Wizard opens.
- ► Click the **Remove** button
- ► Follow the uninstaller instructions
- > StateMonitor is uninstalled.

2.5 Licensing

Demo version (without dongle)

You can evaluate StateMonitor as a demo version for free for a limited time. The demo version is fully-featured, i.e. it includes the software's full range of functions, but it is limited to five machines.

The trial period starts on installation of the software. To continue using StateMonitor after the trial period has expired, you need to purchase the software.



StateMonitor is dongle-protected. After the trial period has expired, StateMonitor will only run with a valid dongle.

- It is not possible to activate a demo license on a virtual server.
- The demo license cannot be remotely activated over a terminal server. Activation must be performed locally on the terminal server.
- All data collected during the trial period are retained for use in the full version.

A license for the demo version is created during installation. This license can be viewed in the WIBU CodeMeter Control Center.

Full version (with dongle)

Purchasing the licensed version converts the demo version into the full version. Five machines are enabled automatically. More machines can be added in sets of five.



All data saved with the demo version are retained in the full version.

The StateMonitor functionality can be extended using additional software options.

You can purchase licenses for software options from your HEIDENHAIN sales representative. You will then obtain a license key that activates the software option on the dongle.

The full version and the options will only run on a PC or server equipped with a USB port for the dongle.



If StateMonitor is installed on a virtual server, then the dongle must be integrated over a suitable USB server or network USB hub.

Activation

Activating the trial version on a PC or server

To activate the StateMonitor demo version on the PC or server on which it is installed, proceed as follows:



- Double-click the Activate StateMonitor icon on the desktop
- > The WIBU CodeMeter Control Center opens.
- > The WIBU CodeMeter Control Center updates the import.
- Click the OK button
- > The demo version is now activated.
- Close the WIBU CodeMeter Control Center



X

The demo version of StateMonitor can only be activated once. If you click the **Activate StateMonitor** icon again, an error message will be displayed.

Activating the full version on a PC or server

To activate the full version of StateMonitor on the PC or server on which it is installed, proceed as follows:

- Connect the USB dongle to an available USB port.
- Restart StateMonitor
- > The full version of StateMonitor is now activated.



If StateMonitor is installed on a virtual server, then the dongle must be integrated over a suitable USB server or network USB hub.

2.6 Starting and ending

Starting the software

To start StateMonitor on the PC or server on which it is installed, proceed as follows:

- > The ControlCenter window opens.
- Click the Start button
- > StateMonitor starts.
- Wait until the **Running** status appears on the screen

Click the ControlCenter icon in the status bar

You have to start StateMonitor on the PC or server in order to access StateMonitor from other PCs, tablets, or smartphones.

If you also want to open the StateMonitor application on the PC or server on which StateMonitor is installed, proceed as follows:

 \mathbf{i}

- Double-click the StateMonitor Website icon on the desktop
- > StateMonitor opens in the default web browser.

Opening the client application on a PC, tablet, or smartphone

To open the StateMonitor client application on a PC, tablet, or smartphone, proceed as follows:

- > Open a web browser, e.g. Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox
- In the address line, enter: <Server Name>:28001 In place of <Servername>, enter the hostname or the IP address of the PC or server on which StateMonitor is installed.
- Press the Enter key
- > StateMonitor opens.



If you open StateMonitor in an older browser, then content may be missing or incorrectly displayed.



Add the address to your favorites or bookmarks in your web browser in order to access StateMonitor quickly in future.

Exiting the software

To exit StateMonitor on the PC or server, proceed as follows:



Log off via the Logout menu

- ili.
- The ControlCenter window opens.
 Click the **Shutdown** button
 - > StateMonitor stops.
 - > All clients are disconnected from the server.

Click the ControlCenter icon in the status bar

Wait until the Stopped status appears on the screen

NOTICE

Caution: Possible loss of data!

If you exit StateMonitor on the server while users are still accessing StateMonitor from other PCs, tablets, or smartphones, the connection between the clients and the server is interrupted immediately. Any input that the users have not yet saved in StateMonitor will be lost.

 Before exiting the software, make sure that all users have logged off

Closing the client application

To close the StateMonitor client application, proceed as follows:



- Log off via the Logout menu
- Close the web browser window

When you exit StateMonitor, the missing period of time receives the status "UNDEF". When you restart StateMonitor and collect a new machine status, then the current machine status is displayed.

2.7 ControlCenter

During the installation of StateMonitor, ControlCenter is automatically installed as well and is indicated in the task bar by the StateMonitor symbol.



- Click the ControlCenter icon
- > The ControlCenter window opens.

ControlCenter provides the following functions and information:

- Starting and exiting of StateMonitor
- Display of the state of StateMonitor (State tab)
- Settings for the log files (Logfile tab)
- Settings for the database (Database tab)
- Settings for ControlCenter (Settings tab)

> start	(U) Shutdown			
State	Logfile	Database	Settings	
(Runn	ing)			
Versio	n			-
State	Monitor Ver	sion: 1.3.0		
Contro	olCenter Ve	rsion: 8.2.6		
HEIDE	INHAIN DNO	C Version: 1.7.	1	
State	Monitor Opt	ions		
Additi	onal Machin	es (Option 1):	10 Machines	
Modbu	us Interface	e (Option 2): 1	Machines	
OPC L	JA Interface	e (Option 3): 1	Machines	
JobTe	rminal (Opt	ion <mark>4):</mark> activate	ed	
MTCo	nnect Inter	face (Option 5)	: 1 Machines	
Mainte	enance Man	ager (Option 6): activated	
Signal	s (Option 7)): 5 Signals		
URL:	nttp://	:2800:	1	
		AIN DNC: Runni		

Starting StateMonitor

To start StateMonitor, proceed as follows:



- Click the Start button
- > StateMonitor starts.
- Wait until the **Running** status appears on the screen

Exiting StateMonitor

To exit StateMonitor, proceed as follows:



- Click the Shutdown button
- StateMonitor stops.
- > All clients are disconnected from the server.
- Wait until the Stopped status appears on the screen

NOTICE

Caution: Possible loss of data!

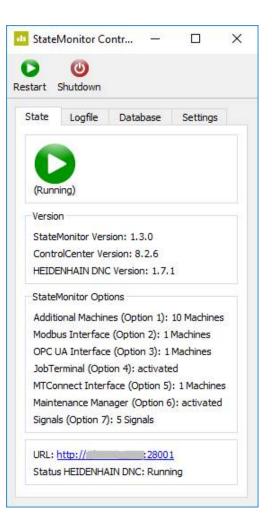
If you exit StateMonitor on the server while users are still accessing StateMonitor from other PCs, tablets, or smartphones, the connection between the clients and the server is interrupted immediately. Any input that the users have not yet saved in StateMonitor will be lost.

 Before exiting the software, make sure that all users have logged off

State tab

In the State tab, you will find the following information:

Element	Description
	Information about the state of the application Possible states: Starting Running Stopping Stopped
Version	Version information about StateMonitor, ControlCenter, and HEIDENHAIN DNC (machine control)
StateMonitor options	Overview of enabled software options Further information: "Extending the functional- ity with software options", Page 47



Logfile tab

In the $\ensuremath{\textit{Logfile}}$ tab, you will find the following functions and settings:

Element	Description				
Download Logfiles	Downloading of the current StateMonitor log file as a ZIP file				
Logfile	Logfile options:				
Settings	Export StateMonitor Log archive				
	Archived log files are exported as well; this may significantly enlarge the log file				
	Export Windows Event Log				
	Additional Export of the Windows Event Log with entries from HEIDENHAIN DNC and StateMonitor				
	Select Log files time period				
	Selection of the time period for the log file				
	Reset				
	Resetting of the options to default values				
Logging	Size adjustment of the ControlCenter log file				
	ControlCenter Lo ? X				
	ControlCenter StateMonitor				
	Basic Basic				
	Extended				
	System				
	Basic				
	Extended				
	OK Cancel				

	Dow	vnload Logfi	es	
Logfile	Settings			
		Ionitor Log		
🗹 Exp	oort Windo	ws Event Lo	g	
Sel	ect Log file	s time perio	d	
From:	12.01.20	20 00:00		
To:	12.02.20	20 08:24		
		Reset		
Loggin	ıg			

Database tab

In the **Database** tab, you will find the following functions and settings:

Element	Description
Backup Database	Backup of the current StateMonitor database (including the machine images and PDF documents)
Database	Options for the connection to the database:
Connection	Database Host
Settings	Host computer with database server (default: "localhost")
	Database Name
	Name of the database (default: "statemonitor")
	Database Schema
	Database scheme (default: "statemonitor")
	Database Port
	Datenbase port (default: "28010")
	If the database server is run on a different computer from that of StateMonitor, then the database TCP port must be enabled in the firewall.

Apply

Application of the options

Backup Database Database Connection Settings Database Host: localhost Database Name: statemonitor Database Schema: statemonitor
Database Host: localhost Database Name: statemonitor
Database Name: statemonitor
Database Schema: statemonitor
Database Port: 28010
Apply

Settings tab

In the **Settings** tab, you will find the following settings:

Element	Description
StateMonitor	Options of the application:
Settings	Windows Event Logger
	Additional logging of StateMonitor data in the Windows Event Log
	Simulated Machines
	Use of simulated machines in StateMonitor
	Status light full size
	Display of the machine statuses as background colors in machine park / button view
	Server Setup HTTPS
	If StateMonitor is run via HTTPS, then a keystore with a valid certificate must be defined
	IP-Camera
	 Access to IP cameras on machines
	Validate Modbus Parameters
	 Validation of the parameters when adding a machine with Modbus interface
	Auto Port
	Port for the application in the browser (default: "28001")
Server	Running StateMonitor as a Windows service
Settings	To register StateMonitor as a Windows service, proceed as follows:
	 Start ControlCenter with administrator rights Stop StateMonitor
	 Click the StateMonitor Service option
	Click the Apply button

State	Logfile	Database	Settings	
State	Monitor Set	tings		
<u> </u>	/indows Eve	nt Logger		
🗹 si	imulated Ma	chines		
S	tatus light fi	ull size		
S	erver Setup	HTTPS		
IF	-Camera			
⊡ v	alidate Mod	ous Parameters	3	
⊠ A	uto Port			
2800)1			
Serve	er Settings			
🗌 s	ta <mark>t</mark> eMonitor	Service		
		Apply		



General usage information

3.1 Target group

The purpose of StateMonitor is to centrally evaluate machine data in order to use machine capacities more effectively.

The intended target groups of StateMonitor are:

- Machine operators (e.g. for operation of multiple machines, oncall duty, weekend operation)
- Employees in the foreman's office and in production planning
- Maintenance and servicing staff
- Controllers and management

3.2 Opening and closing

Opening the client application on a PC, tablet, or smartphone

To open the StateMonitor client application on a PC, tablet, or smartphone, proceed as follows:

- Open a web browser, e.g. Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox
- In the address line, enter: <Server Name>:28001 In place of <Servername>, enter the hostname or the IP address of the PC or server on which StateMonitor is installed.
- Press the Enter key
- > StateMonitor opens.



i

If you open StateMonitor in an older browser, then content may be missing or incorrectly displayed.

Add the address to your favorites or bookmarks in your web browser in order to access StateMonitor quickly in future.

Opening the client application on the control



0

i

In order to operate StateMonitor without a touchscreen, you will need a mouse or a touchpad.

To open the client application of StateMonitor on a HEIDENHAIN control, proceed as follows:

- Move the cursor to the bottom of the control screen
- > The HEROS task bar is displayed.
- Click the Diadur icon
- Select the Web Browser menu item
- > The saved browser is opened.
- In the address line, enter:
 - http:**Servername**:28001 In place of **Servername**, enter the host name or IP address of the PC or server on which StateMonitor is installed
- > StateMonitor appears on the screen.
- Set the display to full screen
- > With the screen switchover key, you can switch between the control screen and StateMonitor.

To ensure communication between StateMonitor and the control through a firewall, you must enable the TCP-Port 28001 in the firewall.



Closing the client application

To close the StateMonitor client application, proceed as follows:



X

- Log off via the Logout menu
- Close the browser window

3.3 Login / Logout

Login

Once StateMonitor has started, users have to log on with their user name and password.



Multiple users can be logged on at the same time.

If you are logging in for the first time after installing StateMonitor, and you have not yet defined any users, then you must first create a user.

Further information: "Password", Page 42

Logout

Before exiting StateMonitor, the users have to log off. To log off, proceed as follows:



- Log off via the Logout menu
- > The empty login window will be displayed.

3.4 Password

You must create an initial password when you log on for the first time after the installation.

Proceed as follows to create an initial password:

- Open the login window
- Follow the instructions

StateMonitor displays the logged-in user as the **default administrator**.

NOTICE

Caution: Possible loss of data!

The password created in StateMonitor can be reset only by a user with administrator rights.

Observe your company's current rules regarding passwords.

3.5 General settings

Display

StateMonitor is a web application that you can use on various devices such as PCs, tablets, and smartphones.

The display is automatically adapted to the respective terminal.

Language

The global language setting can only be changed by a user with the Administrator role.

Further information: "Advanced submenu", Page 184

In the **User settings** submenu, every user can set the language individually without affecting the global language setting.

Further information: "Change language settings for user", Page 149

Time zone

Based on the time zone, StateMonitor determines the valid time for the machine data display.

The correct time zone must therefore be set on the server on which StateMonitor is installed.

The correct time must also be set on the machine so that StateMonitor can correctly process and display the times.

3.6 Overview of the menus

The availability of the individual menus and submenus depends on:

- the activated options
- the role of the corresponding user
 Further information: "Roles", Page 150

In StateMonitor, the following menus and submenus are available:

lcon	Menus and submenus
Home	Home
000	Machines
Machines	Tile view
	Status overview
	Day view
	Messenger
Q	Event configurator
Messenger	Notification profiles
	Notifications
	Jobs (software option)
	Create job
JODS	Assign job
	Adjust machining sequence
	Maintenance (software option)
Maintenance	Tile view
Maintenance	Status overview
	Evaluations
	Machine statuses
Evaluations	Key figures
	Program run times
	Machine alarms
	Job times (software option)
	Signals (software option)
	Maintenances (software option)
	Time filter

				HEIDEN
۵		D	<u>u 2</u>	(Mart Advectmen
1				
	ome user Default.Administrato	*		
	orization status StateMonitor A login: 18.83.2020 12:00:39	udministrator.		
Lases	Mubia narigation			
i				

6

lcon	Menus and submenus
	Settings
Settinas	User settings
Seungs	User management
	Machines
	Add groups
	Machine mapping
	Statuses (software-option)
	Messenger settings
	File backup
	External reporting DB
	Advanced

Info

3.7 Functions in tables and charts

In tables and charts, various functions are available. These depend on the submenu you have opened.

Finding text in tables

Using the **Find:** input field, you can search the table for the desired character string. For this purpose, proceed as follows:

- Enter the search term in the Find: input field
- > The table only displays the rows containing the search term.
- The search term can contain letters, numbers, and special characters.

You can connect multiple search terms using AND or OR.

Gate		Description	Example
AND	"And" operation	The table displays all of the rows containing both of the search terms.	TNC 640 AND 100.0 %
OR	"Or" operation	The table displays all of the rows containing either one of the search terms.	TNC 640 OR iTNC 530

Sorting table entries

You can sort the table entries by column. Proceed as follows:

- Click the header of the column in question
- StateMonitor sorts the table entries in descending order based on this column.



Every time you click the header of a table column, StateMonitor switches between ascending and descending order.

Adjusting the column width

To adjust the column width, drag the separation line with the mouse to the desired position.

Showing the chart related to a table

In many cases, you can display a chart in addition to the table view to represent the table data graphically.



Click the chart symbol or the Graphically visualize a table button

- > StateMonitor shows a chart below the table.
- To display details on a point, bar, or section (if available), click the corresponding item.
- Adjust the display using the checkboxes or selection fields (if available)

Saving table or chart data as CSV files

In many cases, it is possible to save the data from a table or chart as a CSV file. You can import the CSV file e.g. into Microsoft Excel and further process it there.

- Click the Export table button
- Select the desired location
- Click the Save button

3.8 Extending the functionality with software options

The StateMonitor functionality can be extended using additional software options.

You can purchase licenses for software options from your HEIDENHAIN sales representative. You will then obtain a license key that activates the software option on the dongle. The following software options are available:

Option	Extended functionality	ID
1	Five additional machines	1220884-01
2	Modbus Interface	1268670-01
3	OPC UA Interface	1268673-01
4	JobTerminal	1268674-01
5	MTConnect Interface	1268675-01
6	MaintenanceManager	1308520-01
7	Signals	1308521-01

Further information: "Software options and licenses", Page 187

Home menu

4.1 Home menu

Enter your user name and password in the **Home** menu. **Further information:** "Login / Logout ", Page 51

StateMonitor		
	[]	
User		
User Password		

If a user is logged on, then StateMonitor displays the **authorization status** of the logged-on user as well as the time of the last login.

Company-specific start page

If you want to add your company logo or another image file in the **Home** menu, then proceed as follows:

- ► Copy the desired image file into the directory C:\ProgramData \HEIDENHAIN\StateMonitor\homeImage
- > StateMonitor displays the image in the **Home** menu.



StateMonitor can only show one image at a time. Therefore, copy only one image file to the **C:ProgramData'HEIDENHAIN'StateMonitor homeImage** directory.

4.2 Login / Logout

Login

Once StateMonitor has started, users have to log on with their user name and password.



Multiple users can be logged on at the same time.

If you are logging in for the first time after installing StateMonitor, and you have not yet defined any users, then you must first create a user.

Automatic login

Users with the Viewer role can use a special URL to log in from the web browser.

- Open a web browser, e.g.:
 - Microsoft Edge
 - Google Chrome
 - Mozilla Firefox
- In the address line, enter the following: http:\\Servername:28001/jh-tnc-sm-app/operator#!login/Username/Password
 - In the Servername field, enter the hostname or the IP address of the PC or server on which StateMonitor is installed.
 - In the Username and Password fields, enter your user name and your password.
- Press the Enter key
- > StateMonitor opens without displaying the login window.

Add the address to your favorites or bookmarks in your web browser in order to access StateMonitor quickly in future.



i

Saving access data in the address line is possible only for users with the **Viewer** role.

Logout

Before exiting StateMonitor, the users have to log off. To log off, proceed as follows:



- ► Log off via the **Logout** menu
- > The empty login window will be displayed.

5

Machines menu

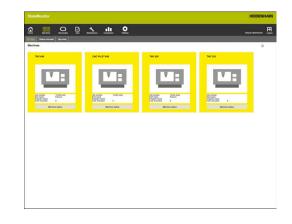
5.1 Machines menu

In the **Machines** menu, StateMonitor displays all of the machines that have been set up and activated in the **Settings** menu.

Further information: "Machines submenuMachines", Page 154

The $\ensuremath{\textbf{Machines}}$ menu contains the following submenus:

- Tile view
- Status overview
- Daily view

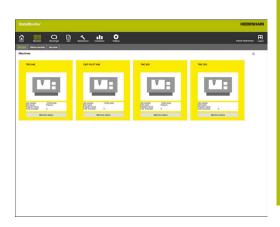


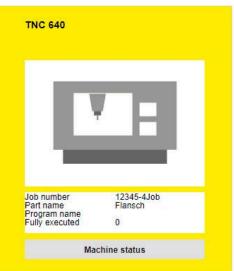
5.2 Tile view submenu

In the **Tile view** submenu, StateMonitor show every activated machine.

The machine status card contains the following information:

Information	Meaning
Machine image	If you upload an image of the machine when adding it, then StateMonitor will show the image here
Status light	Current machine status
Job number	Number of the job being currently machined (software option)
Part name	Name of the currently finished workpiece (software option)
Program name	Name of the NC program currently loaded in Program Run, Full Sequence or Program Run, Single Block mode
Fully executed	Number of complete program runs





Filtering the Tile view

Each user can adapt the **Tile view** as desired. For this purpose, proceed as follows:

Ľ		1
L	303	1
	~~~	

i

- Click the gear symbol
- > A filter selection window opens. The filter criteria encompass machines and machine groups.
- ► To limit the view to certain machines or machine groups, tick the box in front of it with the mouse
- > StateMonitor shows the selected machines.

If no box has been ticked, then StateMonitor will display all of the machines that are assigned to the user (default setting).

## Status light

The colors of the status light have the following meanings:

Color	Meaning
Gray	The machine is not switched on or not connected
Red	The machine is not ready for operation.
Yellow	The machine is ready for operation, but not produc- tive.
Dark green/ Light green	The machine is productive. Dark green = Productive (feed rate & rapid OVR >= 100 %) Light green = Productive (feed rate & rapid OVR < 100 %)

## 5.3 Status overview submenu

In the **Status overview** submenu, StateMonitor graphically displays the machine statuses in doughnut charts.

In doing so, StateMonitor differentiates between:

- Total machines
- Favored machines



#### **Total machines**

The **Total machines** doughnut chart summarizes the machine statuses of all of the activated machines in the machine park. In addition, StateMonitor displays the calculated **Availability** and **Utilization rate** parameters as the average of all activated machines in the machine park.

#### **Favored machines**

The **Favored machines** doughnut chart contains only the machine statuses of machines that have been marked as **Favorite** in the **Overview of favorites**.

#### **Overview of favorites**

The **Overview of favorites** table lists all of the activated machines in the machine park and contains the following information:

- Current Status of the machine
- Machine tool (machine designation)
- Current Mode of operation of the machine
- The Program currently loaded on the machine Program
- Program status
- Number of programs that have been Fully executed
- Status of the current job
- Job number
- Part name
- OK/R/S: returned quantities of Actual amount (OK), Rework (R) and Scrap (S)
- Nominal amount
- Designation as Favorite

## 5.4 Day view submenu

In the **Day view** submenu, you can graphically display the machine statuses of the current day for each machine.

Furthermore, the **Availability** and **Utilization rate** key figures are shown for each machine.

Further information: "Key figures submenu", Page 136

The machine status bar results from the machine status.

A blue line above a section of the status bar indicates that the section contains additional information.

Further information: "Saving additional information", Page 71

The store   Balant concenters		
		Collect Advectories
Daily view		0
	1102140-402201 MC401 DC71 2Culor 30007970 N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	
	102300.9-1022010 OCAUTIN   SK /   College 300012/270	
	n n n n n n n n n n n n n n n n n n n	
1		
	Las l	
Poductive (text site 5 can Poductive (text site 5 can OK, but nat pretactive Not reacy for specialize Detry Machine not in can		

## Showing detailed information

You can show detailed information for each section of the machine status bar. For this purpose, proceed as follows:

- Click a section of the machine status bar
- StateMonitor displays a window containing detailed information about the machine status and any comments.

## Defining the observation period for the machine status bars

By default, the machine status bars show the period from 00:00 to 24:00 hrs. Each user can set this observation period individually. The maximum length of the viewing period is 24 hours.

To adjust the viewing period, proceed as follows:

- (j)
- Click the gear symbol
- > The User-specific adaptation of machine statuses window is displayed.
- In the From: field: select or enter the desired time
- In the to: field: select or enter the desired time
- Click the Save button
- The machine status bars display the selected period.

## 5.5 Overview of machine statuses

The following overview shows the machine statuses triggered by the combinations of active **Mode of operation**, **Program status**, and **Override settings**.

Ma	chine status	Mode of	operation	Program status	Override settings
	Dark green Productive (feed rate & rapid OVR >= 100 %)	->	Program Run, Full Sequence	In progress	≥ 100 %
	Light green Productive (feed rate & rapid OVR < 100 %)	-	Program Run, Full Sequence	In progress	< 100 %
			Program Run, Single Block	In progress	> 0 %
	Yellow OK, but not productive	->	Program Run, Full Sequence	In progress	= 0 %
		->	Program Run, Full Sequence	<ul><li>Selected</li><li>Stopped</li><li>Interrupted</li></ul>	Any
		E	Program Run, Single Block	<ul> <li>Finished</li> <li>Error</li> <li>No program selected</li> </ul>	
		(m)	Manual Operation		Any
			Electronic Handwheel		
			Positioning with Manual Data Input		

Machine status		Mode of operation	Program status	Override settings	
	Red Not ready for operation	Program Run, Full	Error	Any	
		Program Run, Single Block			
	Light gray <b>Delay</b>	The <b>Delay</b> status is not generated directly by the machine. Users can store the <b>Delay</b> status instead of a yellow or dark gray status.			
	Dark gray <b>Machine not in use</b>	<ul> <li>The machine is switched off or</li> <li>StateMonitor cannot establish a connection to the machine or</li> <li>StateMonitor is temporarily shut down</li> </ul>			

## 5.6 Machine status

The Machine status view shows the following information:

- Machine status light
- Machine name
- **SIK** number and control of the machine
- NC software version of the control
- Override settings
- Mode of operation
- Program that is currently active on the machine
- Subprogram that is currently active on the machine
- Program status, Starting time, and Duration of the current program
- Current job (software option)
- Active messenger status
- Program statistics
- Machine reports
- Maintenance status (software option)
- Machine statuses with machine status bar (resulting from the Machine status)
- Utilization rate

To access the Machine status view, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Machines menu
- Click the Machine status button of the desired machine
- > StateMonitor opens the Machine status view.

From the **Machine status** view, you can access additional submenus:

Edit machine statuses

**Further information:** "Edit machine statuses submenu", Page 69

- Job terminal (software option)
   Further information: "Job terminal submenu (software option)", Page 75
- Detailed view of the last 3 days
   Further information: "Detailed view of the last 3 days submenu", Page 79
- Machine alarms

Further information: "Machine alarms submenu", Page 80

Program run times

**Further information:** "Program run times submenu", Page 82

Maintenance & malfunction

**Further information:** "Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)", Page 84



## Displaying the live image

In the **Machine status** submenu, you can call the live image of the camera.

Precondition: An IP camera is configured for the machine.

Further information: "Edit machine", Page 158

For this purpose, proceed as follows:

- Click the camera symbol next to the machine name
- > The live build is shown in a new tab of the browser.

## **Override settings**

StateMonitor graphically displays the **Override settings** for the **Spindle** (speed), the **Feed rate**, and the **Rapid traverse** as percentages.

The display corresponds to the actual potentiometer setting on the control, regardless of the current operating mode.

If rapid traverse and feed rate are on the same potentiometer on your machine, StateMonitor shows the same values for both **Override settings**.

## Mode of operation

StateMonitor displays the **Mode of operation** that is currently selected on the machine.

Only the machine operating modes and the associated symbols are displayed. StateMonitor does not show the programming modes of operation.

#### Machine operating modes

Symbol	Mode of operation		
(m)	Manual Operation		
	Electronic Handwheel		
	<b>Positioning with Manual Data Input</b> (MDI)		
	Program Run, Single Block		
-	Program Run, Full Sequence		

## Program status

**The Program status** provides information on the current status of the NC program on the machine.

The following program statuses can occur:

Program status	Meaning
In progress	The machine is executing an NC program.
No program selected	The machine is not in an operating mode that executes NC programs.
Inactive	The current <b>Mode of operation</b> on the machine is <b>Program Run, Full</b> Sequence, or <b>Program Run, Single</b> Block.
	<ul> <li>No NC program has currently been started or</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>program run was interrupted by an error or</li> </ul>
	The operator stopped the program run with an INTERNAL STOP
Error	The execution of the current NC program was interrupted due to an error.
	The <b>Error</b> status is shown until it is acknowledged on the machine. Then the status switches to <b>Inactive</b> .
Selected	The current <b>Mode of operation</b> on the machine is <b>Program Run, Full</b> Sequence, or <b>Program Run, Single</b> Block.
	The operator has selected a program but not started yet.
Stopped	<ul> <li>The current Mode of operation on the machine is Program Run, Single Block, and the operator has not yet started the next NC block</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Program run was stopped by an MO command in the NC program</li> </ul>
Interrupted	The operator interrupted the program run with <b>NC Stop</b> .
Finished	The current NC program has been executed until the end. An <b>M30</b> or <b>M2</b>

When the machine is switched off, no **Program status** is displayed.

## Current job (software option)

Under **Current job**, StateMonitor displays information on the job that is currently executed on the respective machine. Prerequisites:

The job has been set up

- The job has been assigned to the machine
- The job is currently being executed
- To edit jobs, proceed as follows:
- Click the Job terminal button
- The Jobs submenu is displayed.
   Further information: "Job terminal submenu (software option)", Page 75

#### Active messenger status

Under **Active messenger status**, StateMonitor shows the active **Notifications**.

Further information: "Notifications submenu", Page 97

- []]
- If the Active messenger status area is not visible, then click the slider symbol in the Program statistics area
- Instead of showing the Program statistics area, StateMonitor shows the Active messenger status area.

Current job		
Job number Working step Status	12345-4Job 001a4 Prepare	Since 18.03.20 12:04:39
Job terr	ninal	

## **Program statistics**

Under **Program statistics**, StateMonitor logs the number of fully executed and aborted NC programs.

Counting includes:

- All programs (Total)
- For the current program (Active PGM)

StateMonitor distinguishes the following cases:

Dialog	Meaning
Fully executed	Number of fully executed programs
Interrupted by user	Number of programs interrupted by the user
Interrupted by error message	Number of programs that were interrupted due to an error message
11 115	• <b>Program statistics</b> area is not visible, then the slider symbol in the <b>Active messenger</b>

status area

Instead of showing the Active messenger status area, StateMonitor shows the Program statistics area.

## Machine messages

In the **Machine reports** area, StateMonitor shows the last machine messages.

Each user can define individually which messages are to be displayed under **Machine reports**. For this purpose, proceed as follows:



- Click the gear icon
- A filter selection window opens The filter criteria are error classes, error groups, and messages.
   Further information: "Machine alarms submenu", Page 80
- To add a filter criterion to the selection, enable the checkbox in front of it
- Click the Save button
- > Under Machine reports, StateMonitor will only show the messages that match the selected filter criteria.
- > Filtering only applies to the **Machine reports** section in the **Machine status** submenu.

To view further machine messages, proceed as follows:

- Click the **More** button
- The Machine reports submenu opens.
   Further information: "Machine alarms submenu", Page 80



1	3.03.20 11:59   This is a important message, which should be read with
1	3.03.20 11:59   This is a program completed message
1	3.03.20 01:15   This is a program canceled by user message
1	7.03.20 16:29   This is a program canceled by error message
	7.03.20 12:26   Alarm9
17	7.03.20 11:49   This is a program canceled by error message
	7.03.20 08:59   Alarm9
	7.03.20 07:49   This is a program canceled by user message
	7.03.20 03:44 This is a program completed message
	5.03.20 21:26   This is a program canceled by user message
	5.03.20 15:17   This is a program canceled by user message
	5.03.20 05:04   This is a program canceled by user message
	5.03.20 23:04   This is a important message, which should be read with
	5.03.20 23:04   This is a program completed message
	5.03.20 17:21   This is a program canceled by user message
1	5.03.20 07:10   This is a program canceled by user message

## Maintenance status (software option)

In the **Maintenance status** area, StateMonitor shows the machine's current maintenance status.

To see details or to report malfunctions, proceed as follows:

- Click the Maintenance & malfunction button
- The Maintenance & malfunction submenu is shown. Further information: "Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)", Page 84

#### **Machine statuses**

Under **Machine statuses**, StateMonitor shows the machine status bar of the current day as well as the current **Utilization rate**.



#### Setting the viewing period

By default, the machine status bar shows the viewing period from 00:00 hrs. to 24:00 hrs. Each user can set this period individually. The maximum length of the viewing period is 24 hours.

To adjust the viewing period, proceed as follows:



Click the gear icon

- > The User-specific adaptation of machine statuses window is displayed.
- In the From: field: select or enter the desired time
- In the to: field: select or enter the desired time
- Alternatively, after selection of the Show statuses of the last option, select the desired time period
- Click the Save button
- The machine status bar will now display the selected period.



Adjusting the viewing period also affects the **Edit machine statuses** and **Detailed view of the last 3 days** submenus. You can adjust the viewing period there, too.

#### **Detail view**

To see the Detailed view of the last 3 days, proceed as follows:

- Click the Show the machine status of recent days button
- The Detailed view of the last 3 days submenu is displayed. Further information: "Detailed view of the last 3 days submenu", Page 79

#### Editing machine statuses

To replace undetermined machine statuses with others and to specify them more precisely, switch to the **Edit machine statuses** submenu:

- Click the Edit machine statuses button
- The Edit machine statuses submenu is displayed.
   Further information: "Edit machine statuses submenu", Page 69

## 5.7 Edit machine statuses submenu

#### **Displaying machine statuses**

In the **Edit machine statuses** submenu, StateMonitor shows the machine statuses of the current day in a machine status bar and lists them in chronological order in a table.

To select a day for which StateMonitor should display the machine statuses, proceed as follows:

- Click the calendar symbol next to Date displayed
- Select the desired date
- Alternatively, enter the desired date in the Date displayed field
- Alternatively, you can browse through the days in reverse
- Or you can browse through the days in a forward direction

You can filter the table entries according to:

- The machine status colors (Filter)
- The duration of the individual machine statuses (Show statuses that are longer than...)

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

	Monitor								HEIDEN	
ŝ		<u>a</u>	1 .	<u>.</u>	•					
Editme	chine statuses T	NC 640								
Date day	aged ( III ) to a	2020		feer H	****	*= * =	Show statuses that are longer the	a.,		
14 43 2428	1 THC 640   5	C /   SCothan	Sector of proc			0				
	P 00 04					21 22 23 00	The second second		Ph Utilization rate	
0.	From To		Pressen						New slobs	
	Prove 1a 00-90-34 82:50 H	Made of operation	Pagan ma yani2Pagan		Poper lides	Machine message			CK bit nt potethe	
	62.50.11 06.26.06					The of Propert General	i ne semp		Machine patier and	
	053628 074020	Program Run, Full Securi	na puttinger		in property				OK but not productive	
	10.00 10.00 #	Popul Rut, Ful Sepa	nia munophogan		In progress, Finished				Productive Deed rate &	
	10 30 41 12 01 04	Program Run, Full Segur	na pyllingar		Finished	This is a important message	which should be read with care. The is a	rogram completed message	OK but not productive	
	120106 12041	Program Run, Full Sequ	ena i		No program selected				OK, but not productive	
-									Export table	
									Captor Gales	
	ines of the lattice with									
III Deay										
Seve										

## Replacing and specifying machine statuses

In the **Edit machine statuses** submenu, you have the option of replacing machine statuses with other ones and of specifying them more precisely.



Additional specifications can be defined in the **Settings** menu.

Further information: "Statuses submenu", Page 166

To change a machine status, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Machines menu
- Click the Machine status button of the desired machine
- Select the Edit machine statuses submenu
- In the table, click the **New status** column
- Select the desired status in the selection field
- Click the Save the lines button
- The machine status is changed in the machine status bar.

6

With HEIDENHAIN controls, the control function **FN38** can be used in order to edit machine statuses inStateMonitor from the NC program.

**Further information:** "FN38: Edit machine statuses", Page 73

The table below shows which original machine statuses can be replaced by which specifications:

Original stat	tus	New status (specification)		
Dark green	Productive	Dark green, light green, yellow, red, or gray		
Light green	Productive, feed rate < 100 %	Dark green, light green, yellow, red, or gray		
Yellow	OK, but not productive	Yellow, red, or gray		

70

Original sta	tus	New status (specification)		
Red	Not ready for operation	Red		
Dark gray	Machine not in use	Dark or light gray		

The light-gray **Delay** status does not originally come from the machine and is therefore not an original status.

The light-gray status can replace a yellow original status or a darkgray original status and specify it more precisely.

Example:

If a machine is switched off for maintenance work (dark-gray bar), then you can subsequently set this status in StateMonitor to Delay (light-gray bar).

#### Saving additional information

A blue line above a section of the machine status bar indicates that the status has been replaced or contains additional information.

Proceed as follows to save additional information:



- Switch to the Machines menu
- Click the Machine status button of the desired machine
- Select the Edit machine statuses submenu
- Enter additional information in the Comment column of the table
- Click the Save the lines button
- StateMonitor displays a blue line above the section in the machine status bar.

If you click on a section with a blue line, StateMonitor displays a pop-up window with the inserted comment and any information regarding changed or specified machine statuses.

#### **Editing machine statuses**

You can manually edit individual machine statuses in the machine status bar at a later time. To do so, you "divide" the time entry of a machine status into two mutually independent parts that you then designate with a relevant machine status.

This gives you the option of subdividing monitored time periods to reflect the actual machine occupation for the calculation of key figures (see "Key figures submenu", Page 136).



For defining planned downtimes (e.g., shift change or breaks) see "Time filter submenu", Page 144.

To edit a machine status, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Machines menu
- Click the Machine status button of the desired machine
- Select the **Edit machine statuses** submenu
- In the table, click the row of the desired section
- In the field next to the Split status button, enter the desired cutting point in the form of hh:mm
- Click the Split status buttons
- The section is divided, with the end of the first part corresponding to the beginning of the second part of the entered cutting point.
- Select the desired status in the selection field of the desired section
- Click the Save the lines button

## 5.8 FN38: Edit machine statuses

## FN38 control functionFN38

With HEIDENHAIN controls, the control function **FN38** can be used in order to edit machine statuses inStateMonitor from the NC program.

FN38 can be used with the following HEIDENHAIN controls:

Control	Starting with software version
iTNC 530	34049x-03, 60642x-01
TNC 640	34059×-05
TNC 620	81760x-01
TNC 320	771851-02
TNC 128	771841-02
CNC PILOT 640	68894x-04
MANUAL Plus 620	54843x-04

To be able to use the **FN38** function, you have to enter code number 555343 to enable special functions for Q parameter programming.

The TNC as of software version 34059x-07 allows programming of **FN38** without entering a code number.

## Programming

To program the FN38 control function, proceed as follows:

Q

A

Press the **Q** key at the control



- Press the DIVERSE FUNCTION soft key
- Press the FN38 SEND soft key
- > The control writes the line FN38: SEND /".
- Write the desired machine status Example:

FN 38: SEND / "NEW_STATE: STANDBY"

## Commands

Aided by the following FN38 commands, you can edit the machine statuses in StateMonitor:

Color coding	Syntax	Explanation
Yellow	"NEW_STATE:IDLE"	The machine is ready for operation, but no productive
Red	"NEW_STATE:INOPERABLE"	The machine is not ready for operation
Light gray	"NEW_STATE:STANDBY"	Machine is in the <b>Delay</b> status <b>Delay</b>
	"NEW_STATE:CUTSTATE"	Subdivide the current machine status, see "Editing machine statuses", Page 72
Application exam	"NEW_STATE:RESUME" <b>ple</b>	Restore the original status without editing
Goal: To divide and reass	<b>ple</b> sign the machine status	Restore the original status without editing
Goal:	<b>ple</b> sign the machine status	
Goal: To divide and reass	ple sign the machine status	Restore the original status without editing
Goal: To divide and reass BEGIN PGM FN38NE :	ple sign the machine status	Restore the original status without editing         Program started, PRODUCTIVE machine status         New machine status generated in StateMonitor
Goal: To divide and reass BEGIN PGM FN38NE : FN 38: SEND /"NEW	ple sign the machine status EWSTATETEST MM 2_STATE:IDLE"	Restore the original status without editing         Program started, PRODUCTIVE machine status         New machine status generated in StateMonitor (PRODUCTIVE -> IDLE)

## 5.9 Job terminal submenu (software option)

In the **Job terminal** submenu, the operator can enter the job status during machining at the machine. The operator can edit the entries at a later time.

In the following tables, StateMonitor shows the uncompleted jobs for the machine:

Assigned jobs for machine table:

This table contains all of the jobs that are assigned to the machine. The jobs are shown in their defined machining sequence. The operator can select and start the jobs in the table.

Assigned jobs for machine groups table:

This table contains all of the jobs that are assigned to a machine group to which the machine belongs. The jobs are shown in their defined machining sequence. The operator can transfer the jobs to the **Assigned jobs for machine** table and then start them. These jobs are then no longer visible for the other machines in the machine group.



If no uncompleted jobs are available for machine groups, then StateMonitor hides the **Assigned jobs for machine groups** table.

The creation and assignment of jobs is performed in the **Jobs** menu. There, you can also change the order of job execution.

Further information: "Jobs menu (software option)", Page 102

Specified machining times and numbers of parts will be included in the job evaluation.

**Further information:** "Job times submenu (software option)", Page 141



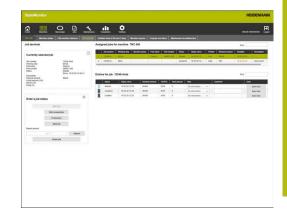
With HEIDENHAIN controls, the control function **FN38** can be used in order to edit machine statuses inStateMonitor from the NC program.

**Further information:** "FN38: Edit machine statuses", Page 73

## **Deadline display**

The preset deadline is color-coded in the table. The color indicates whether the deadline is met:

- **Green**: Deadline is more than 24 hours ahead
- Orange: Deadline will be reached in less than 24 hours
- **Red**: Deadline has been exceeded



## Entering the job status

To enter the job status and to record machining times, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Machines menu
- Click the Machine status button of the desired machine
- Select the Job terminal submenu
- In the Assigned jobs for machine table, click the desired job
- The job information will be displayed in the Currently selected job section.
- Under Enter a job status, click the Start job button
- > Time recording will start.
- Successively click the buttons that correspond to the respective job status at the machine.
- StateMonitor records the times for each job status.
- To finish or abort editing, click the Stop job button
- > This terminates time recording.
- > If desired, you can restart the job.
- To report the nominal amount, select Actual amount (OK) in the selection field
- Enter the quantity in the input field of the manufactured part
- Click the **Report** button
- To report the amount of scrap, select Scrap (S) in the selection field
- > Enter the number of scrap parts in the input field
- Click the **Report** button
- ► To report the number of rework parts, select **Rework (R)** in the selection field
- Enter the number of parts to be reworked in the input field
- Click the **Report** button
- > The quantities are saved in the job.
- ► To complete the job, click the **Finish job** button
- > The job is no longer displayed in the job terminal.
- > The recorded times and quantities can be viewed in the **Evaluations** menu.

#### Transferring a job from a machine group

To assign a job from the machine group to the machine, proceed as follows:

- Click the desired job in the Assigned jobs for machine groups table
- The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- Select the desired position in the Table position for assignment selection field
- Click the Assign working step to the machine button
- The job appears in the Assigned jobs for machine table at the selected position, and it can be started.

## Transferring the job back to the machine group

Precondition: the job has not yet been started. To transfer a job back to the machine group, proceed as follows:

- In the Assigned jobs for machine table, click the desired job
- The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- In the Enter a job status section, click the gear symbol
- StateMonitor displays the Extended job functions window.
- Select the desired position under Transfer selected working step back to the machine group in the Table position for back transfer selection field
- Click the Transfer working step back button
- The job appears in the Assigned jobs for machine groups table at the selected position and can be adopted by any machine from the group.

## Retrieving the last completed job

To retrieve the last completed job, proceed as follows:

- In the Enter a job status section, click the gear symbol
- StateMonitor displays the Extended job functions window.
- Select the desired position under Retrieve most recently ended job in the job list in the Table position for back transfer selection field
- Click the **Rescind last completed job** button
- The job appears in the Assigned jobs for machine table at the selected position.
- > The job is again available for entries.

ŝ

## **Editing entries**

To edit entries, proceed as follows:

- Retrieve the last completed job
- Alternatively, click the desired job in the Assigned jobs for machine table
- The job information will be displayed in the Currently selected job section.
- > The Entries for job table opens.
- If necessary, restart the job
- ▶ If necessary, report a different amount
- ► In the Entries for job table, click the desired row
- If necessary, select a note (specification of the job status)



Additional specifications for job statuses can be defined in the **Settings** menu.

Further information: "Statuses submenu", Page 166

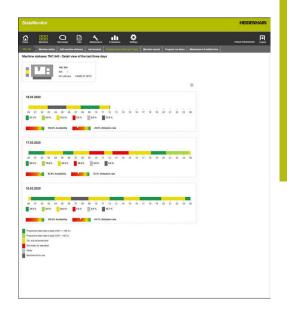
- ▶ If necessary, enter a comment
- Click the Save the row button
- To complete the job, click the Finish job button

## 5.10 Detailed view of the last 3 days submenu

The **Detailed view of the last 3 days** submenu contains the following information:

- The machine status bars of the past three days
- Availability of the machine during the past three days
- Utilization rate of the machine during the past three days

Further information: "Key figures submenu", Page 136



## Setting the viewing period for the machine status bar

By default, the machine status bar shows the viewing period from 00:00 hrs. to 24:00 hrs. Each user can set this period individually. **Further information:** "Setting the viewing period", Page 67

## 5.11 Machine alarms submenu

In the **Machine alarms** submenu, StateMonitor lists the **Machine reports**.

The error messages on the control are divided into **Error classes** and **Error groups**:

- **Error classes** indicate the cause of the error message.
- Error groups provide information on the origin of the error messages.

On HEIDENHAIN controls, users can generate their own messages in the NC program using the **FN38** special function.

**Further information:** "FN38: Sending messages from the NC program", Page 99

StateMonitor displays these messages as **Information**.

	eMonitor							
ŝ		o 🗈 🖞	L	<u>م</u>				
Machi	ine messages from the	machine TNC 640						
Error o	588545	Error groups	Information					
	inergeno stati Ti	v spector fi	- FROM (19			Select all check bones		
	marring (3)	Programming (7) PSC (7)	Phopen			baselect all check bears		
	ida (2) iote (5) Yogram (ancellation (2)	Ceneral information ( Remote (1) Puttern (3)	2) Program	internaled by user (42) internaled by error message (26)		Refresh		
2.8	feed rate shapped (2) leavet (2) some (8)							
						Fed		
			Error class	Engrane	Reported	Administrat		
	tew							
•	Erer The is a prigram cample	led message			18.83.20 11 59.51		1	
•	The is a program complete	led message ge, which should be read with care			18.83.20 11.59.51		1	
•	This is a program canyof This is a important messa This is a program cancele	ge, which should be read with care of to user message		-	18.30.20 (1.59.51 18.30.20 (1.59.51		1	
	This is a program complet This is a important messa This is a program cancele This is a program cancele	ge, which should be read with care of to user message			16.02.20 11.59.51 16.02.20 41.16.37 17.02.20 16.29.28		1	
•	This is a proper complete This is a important messa This is a propert cincele This is a proper cincele Agents	ge, which should be read with care of its user message of its error message		-	18.83.20 11.59.51 18.83.20 11.59.51 17.83.20 19.28.28 17.83.20 19.28.28	17 20 20 14 50 25	l	
	The is a proper carpet The is a imposed meso The is a proper carcele The is a proper carcele Asmit The is a proper carcele	ge, which should be read with care of its user message of its error message	Non	- - - Paganong -	18.83.25 11.59.51 14.83.26 11.59.51 17.83.26 14: 19.37 17.83.26 14:29.28 17.83.26 12.28.28 17.83.26 11.48.31			
	This is a program competing the set of program competing the set of the set o	ge, which should be need with care of its over message of its error message of its error message of its error message	Non	- - - Poganny	19.80.2011 59.51 19.80.2011 53.37 17.83.2014 29.28 17.83.2016 29.28 17.83.2016 29.28 17.83.2016 29.28 17.83.2018 2016 17.83.2018 2016	17.30.20 14.50 28		
	This is a program complete This is a propertied messal. This is a program concells. This is a program concells. Admits This is a program concell. Admits Admits This is a program concell. This is a program concell.	ger, which should be read with care of its over message of by error message of by error message of by over message	- - Note	- - - Popanny - Popanny -	94.02.20 11.09.51 94.02.20 11.09.57 17.09.20 19.29.20 17.09.20 12.29.20 17.09.20 12.09.20 17.09.20 12.09.20 17.09.20 19.09.50 17.09.20 19.09.50			
	The is a program cample The is a program cample The is a program cample The is a program cample Admits The is a program cample Admits The is a program cample The is a program cample The is a program cample	ge, which should be need with care of to user message of to user message of to error message of to error message of to user message toor message	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	- - - Puganng - Puganng -	94.02.20 (199.5) 94.02.24 (193.7) 17.02.24 (292.2) 17.02.01 (292.2) 17.02.			
	This is a program compare This is a program concell This is a program concell This is a program concell Asserts This is a program concell Asserts This is a program concell This is a program concell This is a program concell This is a program concell This is a program concell	ge, which should be read with care of this care message of the error message of the error message of the uncer message of the uncer message of the uncer message		- - - Paganing - - - -	94023019931 9402341937 1702309233 1702302233 1702302333 17023023433 17023023483 1702202489 1702202489 1702202489 1702202488			
	This is a program complete This is a program console This is a program console This is a program concelle Assertio This is a program concelle Assertio This is a program concelle This is a program concelle This is a program concelle This is a program concelle This is a program concelle	ge, which should be read whi care of to care message of to care message of to error message of to care message of to care message of to care message of to care message		- - - - - - - - - -	14.02.20 11.59.51 14.02.20 41.55.27 17.02.20 12.22.20 17.02.20 12.22.20 17.02.20 14.02.11 17.02.20 14.02.11 17.02.20 14.02 17.02.20 14.02 17.02.20 14.02 14.02.20 14.02 14.02.20 14.02.21 14.02.20 14.02.21			
	This is a program cample This is a program cample This is a program cample This is a program cample Assist This is a program cample Assist This is a program cample This is a program cample This is a program cample This is a program cample This is a program cample	ge, shich shadi te nat ulh care d to uno neorge d to entri neorge d to entri neorge d to entri neorge d to unor neorge tec neorge d to unor neorge d to unor neorge		- - - Pagasang - - - -	1002011931 100211937 1702119228 1702119228 170211027 170211001 1702101001 1702101001 170210140 170210140 170210140 1002111722 1002115722 1002199999			
	This is a program complet This is a program complet This is a program concell This is a program concell Asserd This is a program concell Asserd This is a program concell This is a program concell	ge, which should be read with care of by user recoupe of by user recoupe of by error recoupe of by user recoupe to character to character of by user recoupe of by user recoupe of by user recoupe of by user recoupe of by user recoupe		- - - - - - Programming - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	9402019951 940294932 170299233 170299233 170291233 170291243 170291409 170291409 170291409 170291409 170291409 170291409 1802915723 1802915729 1802915759 1802915759			
	This is a program complete This is a program complete This is a program concern This is a program concern Americ This is a program concern Americ This is a program concern This is a program concern	ge, which should be read uith care of the care message of the care message of the error message of the error message of the care message			14.02.011.99.51 94.02.011.92.7 170.021.92.03 170.021.92.03 170.021.92.04 170.021.92.04 170.021.92.04 170.021.92.04 140.021.12.03 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.021.92.04 140.040.040.040.040.040.040.040.040.040.			
	This is a pippler completion of the temperature of tempera	pp, which should be wait with care of by user message of by entry message of by entry message of by user message of by user message of by user message of user message of user message of user message of user message of user message		- - - - - - Programming - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	14.023119951 94.023141937 1702319228 1702319228 1702319228 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 17020 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702317			
	This is a pripare complete This is a pripare memory This is a pripare memory This is a pripare memory This is a pripare complete Alamit This is a pripare complete This is a pripare complete to this is a prip	pp, shill shall be well all over the sum message of the settimessage of the settimessage		Papanni Papanni Papanni Papanni Papanni Papanni Papanni	14.02.2011.99.51 94.02.2011.99.51 97.02.2019.92.20 97.02.2019.20.20 97.02.2019.02.20 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 96.02.2019.04.00 96.02.2019.04.00 96.02.2019.04.00 96.02.2019.04.00 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.2019.04 96.02.04 96.02.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.04 96.0			
	Тех и а рудит сануы Тех и а рудит сануы Тех и а улуушт сануы Тех и а улуушт сануы Тех и а улуушт сануы Амге Амге Тех и а улуушт сануы Тех и а улуушт сануы				14.023119951 94.023141937 1702319228 1702319228 1702319228 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 170231928 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 17020 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702319 1702317			
	This is a pripare complete This is a pripare memory This is a pripare memory This is a pripare memory This is a pripare complete Alamit This is a pripare complete This is a pripare complete to this is a prip			Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Popennig Pop	14.02.2011.99.51 94.02.2011.99.51 94.02.2011.92.20 97.02.2012.22.00 97.02.2012.22.00 97.02.2012.02.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.2019.04.00 97.02.00 97.02.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.00 97.000 97.0000000000			

## **Filtering messages**

To find certain messages more quickly, you can filter by **Error** classes, Error groups, and Information.

In the filter selection, StateMonitor displays the occurring **Error** classes, Error groups, and Information.

You can filter by the following Error classes:

- Emergency stop
- Failure description
- Warning
- Info
- Note
- Program cancellation
- Program stop
- Feed rate stopped
- Reset
- None

The **None** error class contains all error messages that do not belong to any other error class.

You can filter by the following Error groups:

- operation
- Programming
- PLC
- General information
- Remote
- Python
- None

The **None** error group contains all error messages that do not belong to any other error group.

Filtering by Information:

- FN38
- FN 38 Job
- Program successfully completed
- Program interrupted by user
- Program interrupted by error message

To filter the machine messages, proceed as follows:

- Tick the box in front of the desired filter criteria
- Click the Refresh button
- > The table is updated and contains all of the machine messages that correspond to the selected filter criteria.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

## 5.12 Program run times submenu

In the **Program run times** submenu, StateMonitor chronologically lists, in a **Program table**, all of the NC programs that were started during within the selected time period.

The following options are available for delimiting the time frame:

- Time from ... to ...
- Number of days (counting back from the current day)
  - 1 day
  - 3 days
  - 7 days
- Date from ... to ...

The search function within the table (**Find:** input field) searches the **Program**, **Subprogram** and **Status** columns.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46



In addition to the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Program table}}$  , you can display two charts:

- Program run time of the machine {0} chart: Total evaluation of all programs listed in the table
- Program analysis chart: Detailed evaluation of a single program

## Program run time of the machine {0} chart

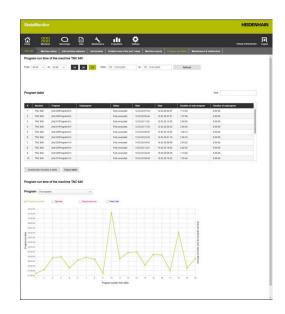
This chart shows the program run times and the average override settings of all programs listed in the table.

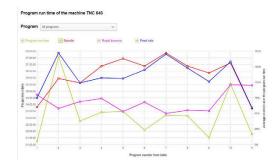
To display the chart, click the Graphically visualize a table button below the table

The chart includes the following information:

- Each vertical line in the grid represents a program
- The value on the horizontal axis represents the program number in the table
- The green data point visualizes the run time of the program (value on the **Program run time** axis)
- The other data points represent the average override settings of the program for Spindle, Rapid trav, and Feed rate (values on the Average override over the program run time axis)
- To display detailed information on a program, hover the mouse over the desired data point
- The chart values, program status, and a percentage evaluation of the machine statuses are displayed in a pop-up window.
- To filter the chart on a program, select that program in the dropdown field
- The chart will then only display the values of the selected program.

**Further information:** "Showing the chart related to a table", Page 46





#### Program analysis chart

A

This chart shows the average override settings and machine statuses during the program run time.

To view the chart, proceed as follows:

- Click the Graphically visualize a table button below the table
- > The Program run time of the machine {0} chart is displayed
- Click any data point on the vertical line of the program
- > The Program analysis chart is displayed

The chart includes the following information:

- The horizontal axis shows the program run time
- The vertical axis shows the override setting
- The lines visualize the override settings for Spindle, Rapid trav, and Feed rate at the respective point in time
- The FMAX status bar visualizes feed rate and rapid traverse (FMAX) during the program run time
- The machine status bar shows the machine statuses during the program run time

The **FMAX** status bar is only displayed if you allow access to the PLC.

**Further information:** "Settings for PLC password", Page 227

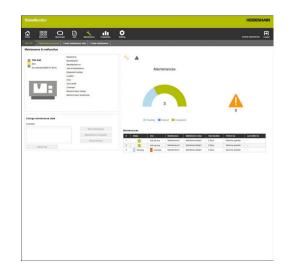


# 5.13 Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)

In the **Maintenance & malfunction** submenu, you can see the current maintenance status of the machine, as well as accept and document maintenance jobs or report occurring malfunctions.

The **Maintenance & malfunction** submenu encompasses the following views.

Symbol	View	
*	Maintenances	
	Malfunctions	





#### Maintenances view

The Maintenances view encompasses the following elements:

- Maintenances doughnut chart
   Further information: "Maintenances doughnut chart", Page 115
- Malfunctions warning symbol: Under the warning symbol, StateMonitor shows the number of the unresolved malfunctions.
- Maintenances table
   Further information: "Maintenances table", Page 117

If you select a maintenance event in the **Maintenances** table, then StateMonitor also displays the **Entries for maintenance: {0}** tables. The **Entries for maintenance: {0}** table chronologically lists the booked statuses of the selected maintenance event.

The **Entries for maintenance: {0}** table contains the following information:

- Status: Current status of the maintenance job
- Status since: Date of the last entry
- Comment: Comment of the user
- User: The user who made the last entry

The creation and assignment of maintenance jobs is performed in the **Maintenance** menu.

Further information: "Maintenance menu (software option)", Page 112

i

## Malfunctions view

The Malfunctions view encompasses the following elements:

- Malfunctions doughnut chart
   Further information: "Malfunctions doughnut chart", Page 115
- Malfunctions warning symbol
- Malfunctions table
   Further information: "Malfunctions table", Page 118

If you select a malfunction in the **Malfunctions** table, then StateMonitor also shows the **Entries for malfunction {0}** table. The **Entries for malfunction {0}** table chronologically lists the booked statuses of the selected malfunction.

The **Entries for malfunction {0}** table contains the following information:

- Status: Current status of the malfunction
- Status since: Date of the last entry
- Comment: Comment of the user
- User: The user who made the last entry

#### Accepting a maintenance event

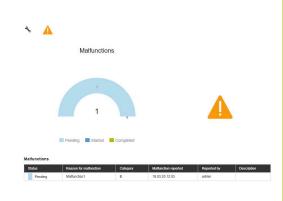


Entries cannot be edited at a later time. It possible to upload a log at a later time.

To accept a maintenance event and record maintenance times, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Maintenance menu
- Select the desired machine in the Tile view of maintenance submenu
- Klick the desired maintenance job in the Maintenances table
- Call linked documents as needed
   Further information: "Displaying linked documents", Page 86
- > The information about the maintenance job appears in the **Maintenance: {0}** section.
- In the Change maintenance section, press the Start maintenance button
- > Time recording will start.
- Once the maintenance tasks on the machine are completed, enter a comment as needed
- Click the Maintenance completed button
- > This terminates time recording.
- The new maintenance status appears in the Maintenances table.
- If necessary, upload a log in the following manner



Precondition: the protocol is available as a PDF file.

- In the Change maintenance section, press the Upload file button
- StateMonitor shows the Upload file for maintenance: {0} window.
- In the File name field, enter a document name
- Click the Upload file button
- Select the file in Windows Explorer
- Click Open
- Close the window
- > The log is loaded and linked to the selected maintenance job.

## **Displaying linked documents**

- To show all of the documents that are linked to a maintenance job, click the All files button
- StateMonitor displays the All files of the maintenance: {0} window containing the following documents:
  - Maintenance documents
  - Documents of all maintenance steps
  - Maintenance protocols
- ► To open a document, click in the **pdf** button in the pertinent row
- > StateMonitor opens the document in a new browser tab.

## **Reporting malfunctions**

Precondition: at least one malfunction reason is defined in the **Settings** menu (specification).

Further information: "Statuses submenu", Page 166

To report a malfunction, proceed as follows:



- To switch to the Malfunctions view, click the warning symbol
- Click the large warning symbol in the Malfunctions view
- StateMonitor displays the **Report malfunction** button.
- Click the **Report malfunction** button
- StateMonitor displays the Report malfunction window.
- Select Reason for malfunction

In the drop-down menu, options are available that were defined in the **Settings** menu. **Further information:** "Statuses submenu", Page 166

- ▶ If necessary, enter a comment
- Click the **Report malfunction** button
- > The malfunction appears in the **Malfunctions** table.

## Accepting a malfunction



Entries cannot be edited at a later time. It possible to upload a log at a later time.

To accept a malfunction and record times, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Maintenance menu
- Select the desired machine in the Tile view of maintenance submenu
- To switch to the Malfunctions view, click the warning symbol
  - In the Malfunctions table, click the desired malfunction
  - StateMonitor displays the Entries for malfunction {0} table.
  - In the Change malfunction state section, click the Accept malfunction button
  - > Time recording will start.
  - Once the malfunction has been resolved on the machine, enter a comment as needed
  - Click the Malfunction fixed button
  - > This terminates time recording.
  - The new status appears in the Malfunctions table.
  - Upload a log as needed

You can upload the protocol in the **Change malfunction state** section. The procedure corresponds to uploading a file to a maintenance event. "Uploading a log"

## **Displaying a log**

- ► To show linked logs, click the **Show log** button
- StateMonitor displays the Logs of the malfunction: {0} window.
- To open a log, click the pdf button in the pertinent row
- > StateMonitor opens the log in a new tab of the browser.



Ð

Entered times appear in the **Maintenance** and **Evaluations** menus.

6

## Messenger menu

## 6.1 Messenger menu

In the **Messenger** menu, you can define which users are to be notified at what times and for which machine messages.

The **Messenger** menu contains the following submenus:

- Event configurator
- Notification profiles
- Notifications

6

The role of the user determines which submenus and functions StateMonitor displays.

**Further information:** "User management submenu", Page 150

Proceed in the following sequence:

 In the Notification profiles submenu, create a notification profile. (Who is to be notified when?)

**Further information:** "Notification profiles submenu", Page 95

- In the Event configurator submenu, configure the events. (For which machine messages should someone be notified?)
   Further information: "Event configurator submenu", Page 91
- In the Notifications submenu, assign the defined events and notification profiles to each other.
   (Which event triggers which notification profile?)
   Further information: "Notifications submenu", Page 97

## 6.2 Event configurator submenu

An event is a circumstance that can occur on the machine, such as:

- Warning message
- Machine stop with error message
- Servicing message / maintenance message
- Alarm

StateMonitor directly detects the messages occurring on the control and lists them in the **Machine status** view in the **Machines** menu.

The messages on the control are divided into **Error classes** and **Error groups**. When configuring the events, you can add entire **Error classes** or **Error groups** to the selection.

In addition, **Information** and **Machine statuses** or messages about **Maintenances** or **Malfunctions** can be part of the selection for an event. In the process, the **Information** is either generated in the NC program on the HEIDENHAIN controls (**FN38**) or by StateMonitor from the information of the control.

## Error classes

On the control, the error messages are assigned to the following **Error classes**:

- Emergency stop
- Failure description
- Warning
- Info
- Note
- Program cancellation
- Program stop
- Feed rate stopped
- Reset
- None

The **None** error class contains all error messages that do not belong to any other error class.

#### Error groups

**Error groups** provide information on the origin of the error messages.

The controls distinguish between the following Error groups:

- operation
- Programming
- PLC
- General information
- Remote
- Python
- None

The **None** error group contains all error messages that do not belong to any other error group.

Machine	crese and the corresponde	ig error classes or groups			
	~				
Error classes Cranger(r) tho Crange Strong Nos Nos Program Lancatulan Program Ling Pred Gar stropped Nom	Errer proge approximation P(C) approximation Decay and anomalion Python None	Memales Nit Nit John Sharing Sharing Sharing Popus tended to see near teacope Popus tended to ear nearope	Kolowie     Karacie Statuses     Kolowie     Połschie Josef zwy & Angel CVVI + 100 %     To Produktie Josef zwy & Angel CVVI + 100 %     C K & Ard I produktie     To C K & Ard I produktie     To C K & Ard I produktie     To Watching and Angel	Reinterances	
				Test	
A   B   F	Error data		Env pag	Tinetianp	
A + Automatic onlecter through - 8 + Selector differing from the a					
This event under the name		Sam			
Madate		Cupi			

## Information

The following options are available under Information:

FN38

On the HEIDENHAIN controls, you can generate notifications via the NC program by means of the **FN38** special function. StateMonitor can receive these notifications and send them by e-mail to the user

FN 38 Job

On the HEIDENHAIN controls, you can report a job status by means of the **FN38** special function via the NC program. StateMonitor can evaluate these statuses

Program successfully completed

StateMonitor generates this notification when the control reads a PGM END, M2, or M30 program end

Program interrupted by user

StateMonitor generates this notification when the operator aborts the program with **INTERNAL STOP** or **NOTAUS** 

Program interrupted by error message

StateMonitor generates this notification when an error message interrupts the running program



Refer to your machine manual.

The information sent by the control depends on the configurable settings of the machine.

## Machine statuses

Under **Machine statuses**, you can define the period after which StateMonitor triggers an event. You can assign a specific value (in minutes) to each machine status.

## Maintenances (software option)

Under **Maintenances**, you can define the status of a maintenance event at which StateMonitor triggers an event.

StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Maintenances due
- Maintenances overdue
- Maintenances started
- Maintenances completed

## Malfunctions (software option)

Under **Malfunctions**, you can define the status of a malfunction at which StateMonitor triggers an event.

StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Malfunction pending
- Malfunction accepted
- Malfunctions completed

## Individual messages

Add existing machine messages to the selection for the event by ticking them in the table.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

6

92

#### **Creating an event**

Be very careful when choosing the messages that are supposed to trigger an event.

## NOTICE

## Caution: Data may be lost!

If you add too many notifications to the selection, the recipient's e-mail inbox may overflow. Further e-mails will then no longer be delivered.

- Create a separates mailbox for StateMonitor
- Select notifications very carefully

## NOTICE

#### Caution: Data may be lost!

If StateMonitor sends too many notifications to recipients, then the e-mail provider may regard these notifications as spam. In this case, the recipient will no longer receive the notifications in his inbox.

Select notifications very carefully

Proceed as follows to create an event:



- Switch to the **Messenger** menu
- Select the **Event configurator** submenu
- Select the Machine, for which you want to create the event
- Select the messages that should trigger the event
- Enter an appropriate name under This event under the name...
- Click the Save button

By means of the selection list you define the machine messages that lead to a notification.

The table contains the columns A and B:

A = Automatic selection through classes groups

## B = Selection differing from the automatic one

Column A in the selection list shows whether the error messages trigger an event through automatic selection via the **Error classes** or **Error groups**.

StateMonitor ticks the box in Column A once you have selected the corresponding error class or error group.

In column B, you can specifically deselect individual messages that are included in the selection through the **Error classes** and **Error groups**.

However, you can also select individual messages in column B if not all of the messages that belong to this error class or group are to trigger the event.

StateMonitor lists all of the added events in a further table.

To view the content of existing events, proceed as follows:

- Click the event in the table
- > StateMonitor loads the selection of messages to the view.

## Deleting an event

Proceed as follows to delete an event:

	Switch to the Messeng	er menu
--	-----------------------	---------

- Select the **Event configurator** submenu
- Select the Machine for which you want to delete the event
- ٦

- Click the recycle bin icon in the table
- > StateMonitor deletes the event and removes it from the table.

## 6.3 Notification profiles submenu

In the **Notification profiles** submenu, you can assign notification information to a defined user and store this information as a notification profile.

A notification profile contains the following information:

- A reference to the User
- Transmission information for sending the e-mail (Notification by ...)
- Transmission time frame (Days, Time)
- The Notification interval

All defined users are listed in the User dropdown field.

The notifications are sent by e-mail. Some e-mail providers also offer the option of forwarding e-mails as instant messages.

## Interval notifications

For the transmission period, you enter the following:

- The weekdays on which StateMonitor notifies the user
- The time span in which StateMonitor sends the notification to the user

Possible notification intervals:

- Immediately
- Once a day
- Collected (set an interval between 1 and 60 mins))

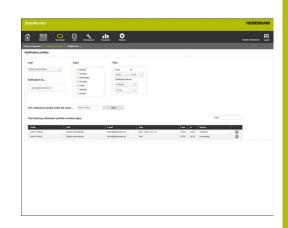
#### **Creating Notification profiles**

You can create multiple **Notification profiles** for a user (e.g. one profile for the time that the employee is present and one profile for the employee's on-call duty times).

Proceed as follows to create a notification profile for a user:



- Switch to the Messenger menu
- Select the **Notification profiles** submenu
- Select the user for whom you wish to create the Notification profiles
- Enter the desired e-mail address
- Select the days of the week on which the user is to be notified
- Select the time from ... to ...
- Select the desired Notification interval
- Select a name for the notification profile
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor saves the notification profile and lists it in the table.



## **Finding Notification profiles**

In the table, StateMonitor lists all profiles for the user selected above.

Via the **Find:** input field, you can specifically look for notification profiles. All columns of the selection list will be searched.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

## **Changing Notification profiles**

Proceed as follows to change an existing notification profile:

- ▶ 5
- Switch to the Messenger menu
  - Select the Notification profiles submenu
  - Select the user for whom you wish to create the Notification profiles
  - Select the notification profile in the table
  - StateMonitor displays the data matching your input.
  - Make the desired changes
  - Click the Save button
  - StateMonitor saves the changed notification profile.

## **Deleting Notification profiles**

Proceed as follows to delete a notification profile:

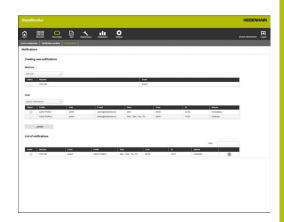


Q

- Switch to the **Messenger** menu
- Select the Notification profiles submenu
- Select the User for whom you wish to create the Notification profiles
- ٦
- Click the recycle bin icon in the table
- StateMonitor removes the notification profile from the table.

## 6.4 Notifications submenu

In the **Notifications** submenu, you can define which events lead to which notifications. Here, you can create, activate, or delete notifications.



#### **Creating a notification**

You can create a new notification by assigning an event to a notification profile.

To create a notification, proceed as follows:

- Q
- Switch to the **Messenger** menu
- Select the Notifications submenu
- Under Machine, select the desired machine
- > A table opens, showing the events available for this machine.
- ► Tick the desired events.
- Select the desired user under User
- A table opens, showing the notification profiles available for this user.
- Tick the desired notification profiles.
- Click the ...assign button
- StateMonitor adds a line with the new notification to the List of notifications.



With HEIDENHAIN controls, the **FN38** control function can generate messages that are processed as notifications in StateMonitor.

**Further information:** "FN38: Sending messages from the NC program", Page 99

## **Activating notifications**

To activate a notification in the list, tick the box in the **Active** column.



StateMonitor will only send notifications after this function has been activated.

## Deleting

Proceed as follows to delete a notification from the list:

Messenger	
٦	

- Switch to the **Messenger** menu
- Select the **Notifications** submenu
- Click the recycle bin icon in the table
- StateMonitor removes the selected notification from the table.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

## 6.5 FN38: Sending messages from the NC program

## **FN38 control function**

With HEIDENHAIN controls, the **FN38** control function can generate messages that are processed as notifications in StateMonitor.

FN38 can be used with the following HEIDENHAIN controls:

Control	Starting with software version
iTNC 530	34049×-03, 60642×-01
TNC 640	34059×-05
TNC 620	81760x-01
TNC 320	771851-02
TNC 128	771841-02
CNC PILOT 640	68894×-04
MANUAL Plus 620	54843x-04

6

To be able to use the **FN38** function, you have to enter code number 555343 to enable special functions for Q parameter programming.

The TNC as of software version 34059x-07 allows programming of **FN38** without entering a code number.

#### Programming

To program the FN38 control function, proceed as follows:

- Q
- Press the Q key at the control



FN38 SEND Press the **DIVERSE FUNCTION** soft key

- Press the FN38 SEND soft key
  - > The control writes the line FN38: SEND /".
  - Write the text to be sent with output formats for variables
     Example:
     FN 38: SEND / "Gemessener Durchmesser:
    - %+3F"/+Q153



The number of formatting instructions has to correspond to the number of formatted values.



**Further information:** The Klartext programming User's Manual of the corresponding control

## **Output format**

You can define the output format of numerical values by means of a formatting operator.

The formatting descriptions are introduced with a percentage sign, followed by the letter  ${\bf f}$  for floating point numbers in decimal notation.

You can add further information between the percentage sign and the code letter.

- A plus sign after the percentage sign means that numerical values are always output with their algebraic sign
- The period and a number define the number of decimal places to be displayed

The following table gives some syntax examples of the output formats of variables:

Output formats	Meaning
*F	Output of a floating point number in original format
%.OF	Output of a floating point number without decimal places
%.1F	Output of a floating point number with one decimal place
%+.2F	Output of a floating point number with algebraic sign and two decimal places

## **Application example**

Goal:

The quantity is increased by one every time a program is run through (parts counter)

Q1 = Q1 + 1	Parts counter
Q2 = 1000	Total quantity
Q3 = 0815	Job
FN 38: SEND/"Number of Parts: %.0F von %.0F Order: %.0F" /+Q1/+Q2/+Q3	Sending messages



## Jobs menu

## 7.1 Jobs menu (software option)

A

Recording and evaluation of jobs is an additional function that is not included in the standard software functionality.

**Further information:** "Software options and licenses", Page 188

With StateMonitor, you can record and evaluate the execution of production jobs. To this end, you create new jobs in the **Jobs** menu and assign them to a machine or machine group.

The **Jobs** menu contains the following submenus:

- Create job
- Assign job
- Adjust machining sequence

Assigned jobs are displayed in the **Job terminal** submenu of the machine. The operator can enter machining times for a job and report the number of parts produced.

**Further information:** "Job terminal submenu (software option)", Page 75

For entering machining times, the operator can use the predefined job statuses. Job statuses can be specified in greater detail in the **Settings** menu.

Further information: "Statuses submenu", Page 166

Specified machining times and numbers of parts will be included in the job evaluation.

**Further information:** "Job times submenu (software option)", Page 141



The role of the user determines which submenus and functions StateMonitor displays.

**Further information:** "User management submenu", Page 150



With HEIDENHAIN controls, the **FN38** control function can be used to edit job functions in StateMonitor in the NC program.

**Further information:** "FN38: Job functions in the NC program", Page 107

## 7.2 Create job submenu (software option)

In the Create job submenu, you can do the following:

- Create new jobs
- Change jobs
- Delete jobs
- Export jobs as a CSV file
- Import jobs from a CSV file

## Creating a new job

To create a new job, proceed as follows:



F

- Switch to the **Jobs** menu
- Select the Create job submenu
- Enter the job number in the Job number field
- Enter the working step in the Working step field
- Enter other information on the job, if required
- Click the Create job button
- > The job is displayed in the **Created jobs** table.
- You can assign the new job to a machine or machine group.

**Further information:** "Assign job submenu (software option)", Page 105

To create multiple working steps for a job, proceed as follows:

- Add a job in the manner described
- Select the job in the Created jobs table
- The data entered for the job is copied to the Create job section.
- Adapt the information, such as the work step
- Click the Create job button
- > The new working step is added.

## Changing a job

Prerequisite: The job has not been assigned to any machine. To change a job, proceed as follows:

- ▶ In the Created jobs table, click the job to be changed
- > The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- > The data entered for the job is copied to the **Create job** section.
- Change the data as required
- Click the Change job button
- > The changes are applied.

		Created jobs								Fed	
reate job		AD NOTAR	WHEN DO	Petrone	Patneter	2044	These stress	Pierty	Normal amount	Deather	Description
2045-6.60	Wanting step *	122015-6240	0004	Fairbard	10.1010	Creded	18-35-20 12:03	High	350	10.00.20 2	long mount
Patisane	Patrumer	12345-4340	6254		3876ebc	Created	18-50 20 12:00	normal	- 15		
Family	540821-062	12545-4260	00104	Farsth	3821-005	Created	16-00-20 12:00	High	1000	10.00.20.2	max 51 min.
Pronty	Numinal amount										
	¥ 8408	CreatedJobe%	evies.import.iob	Export pills							
III 18.63,2009	2358										
Description	2358 -										
hereadout											
hished jobs	Winting the	Patterne Patte	eter i	144	Table since	Mattere	None	at second 1	KNS Dealer	Test	cratics

## Deleting a job

Prerequisite: The job has not been assigned to any machine. To delete a job, proceed as follows:

- In the Created jobs table, click the job to be deleted
- > The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- Click the Delete job button
- > The job is deleted from the table.

## **Export jobs**

You can export the jobs in the **Created jobs** table as a CSV file.

6

If you filter the table, then StateMonitor will export only those jobs corresponding to the filter.

In order to export one of the jobs, proceed as follows:

- Filter the Created jobs table as needed
   Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46
- Click the Export jobs button
- Select the storage location
- Click the Save button
- > StateMonitor saves the table as a CSV file.

## Import jobs

From a CSV file, you can import jobs to the  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Created jobs}}$  table.

In order to import jobs, proceed as follows:

- Click the Import jobs button
- Select file
- Click the Open button
- StateMonitor imports the data from the CSV file to the Created jobs table.

## 7.3 Assign job submenu (software option)

## Assign job

You can assign a job to a machine or machine group and thereby release it for machining. Subsequently, the job appears in the **Job terminal** of the corresponding machines. Jobs that you assign to a machine group can be taken by any machine in the machine group. For this purpose, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Jobs menu
- Select the **Assign job** submenu
- Select the job in the Created jobs table
- The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- Make a selection in at least one of the following selection fields:
  - Select machine group
  - Choose machine
- Enter other job-relevant information, if required
- Click the Assign job button
- > The job is displayed in the **Assigned jobs** table.
- You can start machining this job.
   Further information: "Job terminal submenu (software option)", Page 75

#### Changing a job assignment

Precondition: the job has not yet been started in the **Job terminal**. To assign an assigned job to another machine or machine group, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the **Jobs** menu
- Select the **Assign job** submenu
- Select the job in the **Assigned jobs** table
- The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- Make the changes
- Click the Assign job button
- > The assignment is changed.

## Deleting a job

Prerequisite: The job has not been assigned to any machine.

To delete a job, proceed as follows:

- In the Created jobs table, click the job to be deleted
- > The selected job is highlighted in green in the table.
- Click the **Delete job** button
- > The job is deleted from the table.



# 7.4 Adjust machining sequence submenu (software option)

In the job terminal of each machine, StateMonitor lists the assigned jobs in chronological order. You can change this order manually. For this purpose, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the **Jobs** menu
- Select the Adjust machining sequence submenu
- In the selection fields, select the machine or machine group for which you would like to adapt the machining sequence
- The Jobs for machine or machine group table shows all of the jobs that are assigned to the selected machine or machine group.
- Use the mouse to drag each job to the desired position
- The jobs are listed in the defined order in the Job terminal submenu.
   Further information: "Job terminal submenu (software option)", Page 75

	Noninal annual Decoption 19405
Monte-Super-S	Noninal annual Decoption 19405
Normalization         Normalinstation in this instation         Normalization	Noninal annual Decoption 19405
Distrit         Oracle         Notes         Product         Notes	Noninal annual Decoption 19405
Matter functione machine graps, ThC 40         Matter graps, ThC 40	Noninal annual Decoption 19405
National Structure (sec)         National Mathematical Structure (sec)         Sec(se)         S	Noninal annual Decoption 19405
An entry         Balance and Balance and 1         Declaration (Balance and 1         Conclusion         Fact and Balance and 1         Declaration (Balance and 1         Declaration (Balance and 1	19-05
1 526-548 894 No.49 No.4	19-05
	350 Iong meunt
Technol Units Feed	
	Fed
Juli nurder Working deg Partnese Partneser Statu Statu Statu Market Normal annual (KSUS) Coadine Devojation	ne Destinition Factors i
and the second	

## 7.5 FN38: Job functions in the NC program

## **FN38 control function**

With HEIDENHAIN controls, the **FN38** control function can be used to edit job functions in StateMonitor in the NC program.

FN38 can be used with the following HEIDENHAIN controls:

Control	Starting with software version
iTNC 530	34049x-03, 60642x-01
TNC 640	34059×-05
TNC 620	81760x-01
TNC 320	771851-02
TNC 128	771841-02
CNC PILOT 640	68894x-04
MANUAL Plus 620	54843x-04

6

To be able to use the **FN38** function, you have to enter code number 555343 to enable special functions for Q parameter programming.

The TNC as of software version 34059x-07 allows programming of **FN38** without entering a code number.

## Creating a new job

As an alternative to creation via StateMonitor, you can create a job on the control via a **FN38** message.

The FN38 message must have the following syntax:

FN 38:

SEND /"JOB:jobnumber_STEP:workingstep_CREATE"

Prerequisites:

The control is able to send FN38 messages
 Further information: "FN38: Sending messages from the NC program", Page 99

#### Application example

Goal:

Job with job number 1234 and working step 1

## FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_CREATE"

Create a new job



When you enter the command for **FN 38**, you must pay attention to capitalization.

## Entering the job status

Via FN38 messages, you can report a job status to StateMonitor.

The **FN38** message must have the following syntax: FN 38:

SEND /"JOB:jobnumber_STEP:workingstep_status"

Prerequisites:

- The control is able to send FN38 messages
   Further information: "FN38: Sending messages from the NC program", Page 99
- The job has been set up
- The job has been assigned to the machine

## **Application example**

#### Goal:

Job with job number 1234 and working step 1

FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_START"	Start job
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_PREPARATION"	Start preparation
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_PRODUCTION"	Production
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_STOP"	Stop job
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_FINISH"	Finish job



When you enter the command for **FN 38**, you must pay attention to capitalization.

#### **Reporting quantities**

- If you enter an incremental value, the quantity is incremented by the value you specify.
- If you enter an absolute value, the old value is overwritten by the new one.

The FN38 message must have the following syntax:

FN 38:

SEND /"JOB:jobnumber_STEP:workingstep_category_quantity"
Prerequisites:

The control is a

- The control is able to send FN38 messages Further information: "FN38: Sending messages from the NC program", Page 99
- The job has been set up
- The job has been assigned to the machine
- The job is currently being executed

#### **Application example**

Goal:

Job with job number 1234 and working step 1; additional provided information of nominal quantity 23, scrap 12, and rework 15, and incremental entries

FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_OK_I:1" Actual amount (OK) incremental value
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_S_A:12" Scrap (S) absolute value
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_S_I:1" Scrap (S) incremental value
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_R_A:15" Rework (R) absolute value
FN 38: SEND /"JOB:1234_STEP:1_R_I:1" Rework (R) incremental value

6

When you enter the command for  $\ensuremath{\text{FN}}$  38, you must pay attention to capitalization.



## Maintenance menu

## 8.1 Maintenance menu (software option)

The recording and documenting of maintenance events is an auxiliary function and is not included in the software's standard range of functions.

**Further information:** "Software options and licenses", Page 188

With StateMonitor, you can create, document, and analyze maintenance events. In order to do so, create maintenance jobs for individual machines in the **Maintenance** menu.

The **Maintenance** menu contains the following submenus:

Tile view

Ð

- Maintenance terminal
- Create maintenance step
- Create maintenance
- Status overview

In the **Maintenance** menu, all of the machines are shown that have been created and activated in the **Settings** menu.

Further information: "Machines submenuMachines", Page 154

Active maintenance jobs appear in the **Machines** menu in the status view of the machine. In the **Maintenance & malfunction** submenu, the operator can accept and document maintenance jobs.

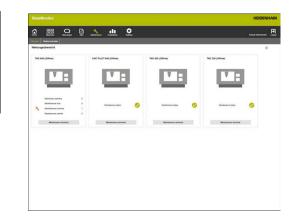
**Further information:** "Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)", Page 84

You can analyze completed maintenance events for individual machines in the **Evaluations** menu.

**Further information:** "Maintenances submenu (software option)", Page 143

The role of the user determines which submenus and functions StateMonitor displays.

Further information: "User management submenu", Page 150



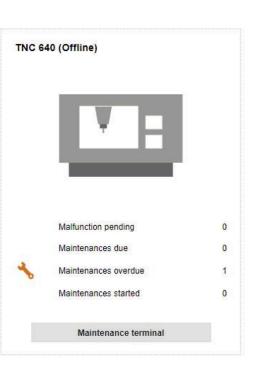
F

### 8.2 Tile view submenu (software option)

In the **Tile view** submenu, StateMonitor depicts every activated machine as status card.

The machine status card contains the following information:

Information	Meaning			
Machine image	If, in the <b>Settings</b> menu, you have saved an image for the machine, StateMonitor will display the image here			
Maintenance status	Current maintenance status of the machine			



#### Symbols

The following symbols indicate the maintenance status:

Symbol	Meaning
Green	No maintenance event is due
<b>~</b>	
Light	At least one maintenance event is due
orange	
-	
Dark	At least one maintenance event is overdue
orange	
*	
Light blue	At least one maintenance event is accepted
2	
Δ	At least one malfunction is pending

#### Filtering the Tile view

Each user can individually adapt the view. For this purpose, proceed as follows:



Click the gear symbol

- > A filter selection window opens. The filter criteria encompass machines and machine groups.
- To limit the view to certain machines or machine groups, tick the box in front of it with the mouse
- > StateMonitor displays the selected machine.

6

If no box has been ticked, then StateMonitor shows all of the machines that are assigned to the user (standard setting).

# 8.3 Status overview submenu (software option)

In the **Status overview** submenu, StateMonitor displays an overview of the maintenance event statuses and due dates of all activated machines.

You can choose from among the following graph views:

- Doughnut charts: show the quantity and status of the maintenance events and malfunctions
- Time-axis chart: show the due dates of the planned maintenance events

#### Maintenances doughnut chart

The **Maintenances** doughnut chart depicts the quantity and statuses of all active maintenance events.

StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Pending: Maintenance events with the status due or overdue
- Started: All accepted maintenance events
- Completed: All completed maintenance events from the current day

6		
	5	
	-	

 To call the doughnut chart, click the pie chart symbol



#### Malfunctions doughnut chart

The **Malfunctions** doughnut chart shows the quantity and statuses of the reported malfunctions.

StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Pending: All of the reported malfunctions
- Started: All accepted malfunctions
- **Completed**: Completed malfunctions from the current day



 To call the doughnut chart, click the pie chart symbol

#### Planned maintenances (by calendar)

The **Planned maintenances (by calendar)** time-axis chart shows the due dates of all active maintenance jobs based on an interval of time.

StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Due
- Overdue



To call the Planned maintenances (by calendar) time-axis chart, click the calendar symbol

0

In addition to the **Planned maintenances (by calendar)** time-axis chart, you also can show the following time-axis charts.



## Planned maintenances (productive machine hours) time-axis chart

The **Planned maintenances (productive machine hours)** time-axis chart shows the due dates of all active maintenance jobs based on the number of productive machine hours.

StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Due
- Due (other causes are possible)*
- Overdue
- Overdue (other causes are possible)*

* Further due dates are defined for the maintenance event. **Further information:** "Create maintenance", Page 127



To show or hide the Planned maintenances (machine hours) time-axis chart, click the chart symbol



8

#### Planned maintenances (machine hours) time-axis chart

The **Planned maintenances (machine hours)** time-axis chart shows the due dates of all active maintenance jobs based on the number of online machine hours.

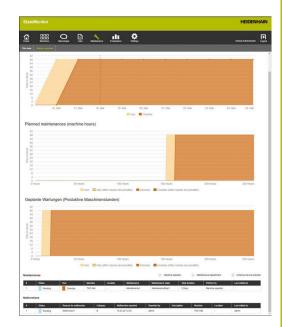
StateMonitor differentiates between the following statuses:

- Due
- Due (other causes are possible)*
- Overdue
- Overdue (other causes are possible)*

* Further due dates are defined for the maintenance event. **Further information:** "Create maintenance", Page 127



 To show or hide the Planned maintenances (machine hours) time-axis chart, click the clock symbol



#### Maintenances table

The **Maintenances** table lists all of the pending, accepted, and completed maintenance events and contains the following information:

- **Status**: Current status of the maintenance event
- Due: Due date of the maintenance event
- **Machine tool**: Machine designation
- **Location**: Location of the machine
- Maintenance: Name of the maintenance event
- Maintenance steps: Name of the maintenance steps encompassed by the maintenance event
- Total duration: Duration of all the maintenance steps added together
- Perform by: Responsible roles defined when the maintenance steps were created
- Last edited by: Name of the user who entered the last status

### Malfunctions table

The **Malfunctions** table lists all of the pending and accepted malfunctions and contains the following information:

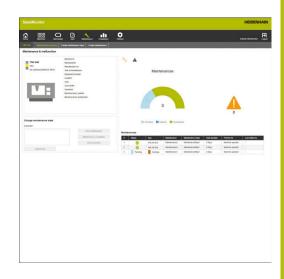
- Status: Current status of the malfunction
- Reason for malfunction: From the user when the selected reason for the malfunction is reported
- **Category**: Category of the malfunction to which the selected reason for the malfunction belongs
- Störung eingegangen: Time at which the malfunction was reported
- **Gemeldet durch**: Name of the user who reported the malfunction
- **Description**: Comment from the user
- Machine tool: Machine designation
- **Location**: Location of the machine
- Last edited by: Name of the user who entered the last status

# 8.4 Maintenance terminal submenu (software option)

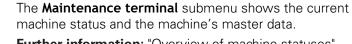
In the **Maintenance terminal** submenu, you can see the current maintenance status of the machine, as well as accept and document maintenance jobs during execution on the machine. You can subsequently upload a log.

The Maintenance terminal submenu contains the following views.

Symbol	View	
*	Maintenances	
	Malfunctions	



To switch between the views, click the respective symbol



**Further information:** "Overview of machine statuses", Page 59

**Further information:** "Edit machine", Page 158 (master data of the machine)

6

i

To report a malfunction, switch to the **Machines** menu. **Further information:** "Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)", Page 84

#### Maintenances view

The Maintenances view encompasses the following elements:

- Maintenances doughnut chart
   Further information: "Maintenances doughnut chart", Page 115
- Malfunctions warning symbol: Under the warning symbol, StateMonitor shows the number of the unresolved malfunctions.
- Maintenances table
   Further information: "Maintenances table", Page 117

If you select a maintenance event in the **Maintenances** table, then StateMonitor also displays the **Entries for maintenance: {0}** tables. The **Entries for maintenance: {0}** table chronologically lists the booked statuses of the selected maintenance event.

The **Entries for maintenance: {0}** table contains the following information:

- Status: Current status of the maintenance job
- Status since: Date of the last entry
- Comment: Comment of the user
- User: The user who made the last entry



#### Malfunctions view

The Malfunctions view encompasses the following elements:

- Malfunctions doughnut chart
   Further information: "Malfunctions doughnut chart", Page 115
- Malfunctions warning symbol
- Malfunctions table
   Further information: "Malfunctions table", Page 118

If you select a malfunction in the **Malfunctions** table, then StateMonitor also shows the **Entries for malfunction {0}** table. The **Entries for malfunction {0}** table chronologically lists the booked statuses of the selected malfunction.

The Entries for malfunction  $\{0\}$  table contains the following information:

- Status: Current status of the malfunction
- Status since: Date of the last entry
- **Comment**: Comment of the user
- User: The user who made the last entry

This reporting of malfunctions is performed in the **Machines** menu.

**Further information:** "Maintenance & malfunction submenu (software option)", Page 84

#### Accepting a maintenance event



i

Entries cannot be edited at a later time. It possible to upload a log at a later time.

To accept a maintenance event and record maintenance times, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Maintenance menu
- Select the desired machine in the Tile view of maintenance submenu
- Klick the desired maintenance job in the Maintenances table
- Call linked documents as needed
   Further information: "Displaying linked documents", Page 86
- > The information about the maintenance job appears in the **Maintenance: {0}** section.
- In the Change maintenance section, press the Start maintenance button
- > Time recording will start.
- Once the maintenance tasks on the machine are completed, enter a comment as needed
- Click the Maintenance completed button
- > This terminates time recording.
- The new maintenance status appears in the Maintenances table.
- If necessary, upload a log in the following manner



#### Uploading a log

Precondition: the protocol is available as a PDF file.

- In the Change maintenance section, press the Upload file button
- StateMonitor shows the Upload file for maintenance: {0} window.
- In the File name field, enter a document name
- Click the Upload file button
- Select the file in Windows Explorer
- Click Open
- Close the window
- > The log is loaded and linked to the selected maintenance job.

#### **Displaying linked documents**

- To show all of the documents that are linked to a maintenance job, click the All files button
- StateMonitor displays the All files of the maintenance: {0} window containing the following documents:
  - Maintenance documents
  - Documents of all maintenance steps
  - Maintenance protocols
- ▶ To open a document, click in the **pdf** button in the pertinent row
- > StateMonitor opens the document in a new browser tab.

#### Accepting a malfunction



Entries cannot be edited at a later time. It possible to upload a log at a later time.

To accept a malfunction and record times, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Maintenance menu
- Select the desired machine in the Tile view of maintenance submenu
- A
- To switch to the Malfunctions view, click the warning symbol
- In the Malfunctions table, click the desired malfunction
- StateMonitor displays the Entries for malfunction {0} table.
- In the Change malfunction state section, click the Accept malfunction button
- > Time recording will start.
- Once the malfunction has been resolved on the machine, enter a comment as needed
- Click the Malfunction fixed button
- > This terminates time recording.
- The new status appears in the Malfunctions table.
- Upload a log as needed

You can upload the protocol in the **Change malfunction state** section. The procedure corresponds to uploading a file to a maintenance event. "Uploading a log"

#### **Displaying a log**

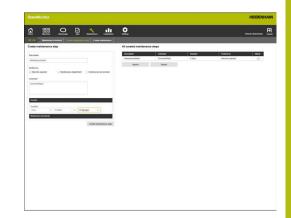
A

- ► To show linked logs, click the **Show log** button
- StateMonitor displays the Logs of the malfunction: {0} window.
- ▶ To open a log, click the **pdf** button in the pertinent row
- > StateMonitor opens the log in a new tab of the browser.

# 8.5 Create maintenance step submenu (software option)

#### In the Create maintenance step submenu, you can:

- Create maintenance steps from which you can subsequently generate maintenance jobs
- Change maintenance steps
- Delete maintenance steps
- Export maintenance steps as an XML file
- Import maintenance steps from an XML file



#### Creating a maintenance step

To create a maintenance step, proceed as follows:



f)

- Switch to the Maintenance menu
- Select the desired machine in the Tile view of maintenance submenu
- Select the Create maintenance step submenu
- Enter a designation in the **Description** field
- Select the responsible role under Perform by (multiple selections are possible)
- Enter any additional information as needed in the Comment field
- Enter the duration of the maintenance step as needed in the **Duration** pull-down menu
- Click the Create maintenance step button
- > The maintenance step appears in the **All created maintenance steps** table.
- You can use the new maintenance step for the creation of maintenance jobs.
   Further information: "Create maintenance submenu (software option)", Page 126

If you tick the box in the **Global** column, then the maintenance step is available for all of the machines. If you untick the box, then the maintenance step is available only for the selected machine.

#### Uploading a document to a maintenance step

To upload documents to a maintenance step, proceed as follows:

- In the All created maintenance steps table, click the maintenance step that you would like to change
- > The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- > The job information is transferred to the **Create maintenance step** section.
- Select Maintenance documents in the pull-down menu
- In the File name field, enter a document name
- Click Upload file
- Select the file in Windows Explorer
- Click Open
- Close the window
- The document is uploaded and linked with the selected maintenance step.

#### Linking an existing document with a maintenance step

To link uploaded documents with a maintenance step, proceed as follows:

- In the All created maintenance steps table, click the maintenance step that you would like to change
- > The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- The job information is transferred to the Create maintenance step section.
- Select Maintenance documents in the pull-down menu
- Click the Link existing file button
- > StateMonitor displays the available files.
- Select the desired file
- Click the Upload document button
- > The document is linked with the selected maintenance step.

#### Deleting a document linkage

To delete the linkage between a maintenance step and a document, proceed as follows:

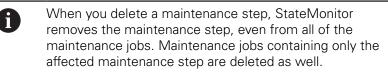
- Click the maintenance step in the All created maintenance steps table
- The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- The job information is transferred to the Create maintenance step section.
- Select Maintenance documents in the pull-down menu
- Click the recycle bin symbol next to the desired document
- Click the Yes button in the dialog box
- > StateMonitor deletes the linkage.

#### Changing a maintenance step

To change a maintenance step, proceed as follows:

- In the All created maintenance steps table, click the maintenance step that you would like to change
- > The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- > The maintenance step information is transferred to the **Create maintenance step** section.
- Change the information
- Click the Save maintenance step button
- > The changes are applied.

#### Deleting a maintenance step



To delete a maintenance step, proceed as follows:

- In the All created maintenance steps table, click the maintenance step you would like to delete
- The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- Click the Delete maintenance step button
- If the maintenance step is used in maintenance jobs, then StateMonitor displays a list of the maintenance jobs.
- ▶ To delete the maintenance step, click the **Yes** button
- > The maintenance step is deleted from the table.

#### **Exporting maintenance steps**

You can export the maintenance steps in the **All created maintenance steps** table as an XML file.

To export one of the maintenance steps, proceed as follows:

- Click the Export button
- Select the storage location
- Click the Save button
- > StateMonitor saves the data from the table as an XML file.

#### Importing maintenance steps

You can import maintenance steps from an XML file into the **All** created maintenance steps table.

To import maintenance steps, proceed as follows:

- Click the Import button
- Select file
- Click the Open button
- StateMonitor imports the data from the XML file into the All created maintenance steps table.

8

# 8.6 Create maintenance submenu (software option)

#### In the **Create maintenance** submenu, you can:

- Create maintenance jobs for the selected machine
- Change maintenance jobs
- Delete maintenance jobs

Mantenarya/See						lenance sleps Time Int	level intend in hours (pro	Active) Interval in hours (order	i Mattine
	2 6 Hours 30 Minutes	Machine operator	Commeridities 1		rtenance2 Mart		1 Novi	A	
	2 6 Hours of Minutes	Machine specialor	ConnertStep2	- tra	ntenance3 Marr	Export		151 Heurs	
Define a due date				- the		Capital Capital			
Tana									
Due after 3	des v stells v	Tean v Rate	aming time -2 days						
Duestue after additional	Dan v	. Terr	anny tree -1 days						
	0 11.00.2020								
	11.05.2020								
Walton hart Walton synts									
Rabouro Scoterb			2.						
a constant and a second									
same of the maintenance	C Mantanance1								
Create maintenance	Delete maintenance	Charge mantenence							

#### Create maintenance

For a maintenance event, you will need to define at least one due date.

The due date may be based on:

- A point in time
- A certain number of machine hours
- The occurrence of machine messages

1

If you define multiple due dates, StateMonitor displays the maintenance as due as soon as the earliest condition occurs.

To create a maintenance event, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Maintenance menu
- Select the desired machine in the Tile view of maintenance submenu
- Select the Create maintenance submenu
- In the Select one or more maintenance steps... table, tick the box in front of the maintenance steps that the maintenance job is to contain
- Define the due date as follows

#### Defining the due date based on an interval of time:

- Select **Time** in the pull-down menu
- Select the number of days, months, or years after which the maintenance event is due
- Select the number of post-due-time days after which the maintenance event becomes overdue
- At Start date, click the calendar symbol
- Select the desired date
- Alternatively, enter the desired number or the desired date

#### Defining the due date based on machine hours:

- Select Machine hours in the pull-down menu
- > StateMonitor displays the current number of machine hours:
  - Productive machine hours (sum of the machine hours based on the recorded dark-green and light-green machine states)
  - Online machine hours (sum of the machine hours based on the recorded dark-green, light-green, yellow, and red machine statuses)

#### Further information: "Statuses submenu", Page 166

- In the **Due after** field, enter the respective number of machine hours after which the maintenance is due
- In the Overdue after additional field, enter the respective number of post-due-time machine hours after which the maintenance event becomes overdue
- In the Start hour counter at machine hour field overwrite the current number of machine hours as needed (e.g., enter the value "0" in order to have the machine hours counter start at "0")

- Select Machine reports in the pull-down menu
- In the Due and Overdue columns, select the machine messages that are to trigger the respective status
- Enter a designation in the Name of the maintenance: field
- Click the Create maintenance button
- > The maintenance event appears in the Maintenances of the machine: {0} table.
- > The maintenance event is active.
- The maintenance event appears in the Maintenance terminal submenu of the machine.
   Further information: "Maintenance terminal submenu (software option)", Page 119



f)

If you tick the box in the **Active** column, then the maintenance event appears in the **Maintenance terminal** submenu of the selected machine.

How to quickly and easily create multiple maintenance jobs:

- Create a maintenance job as described
- Select the maintenance job in the All created maintenance steps table
- > The maintenance job information is transferred to the **Create maintenance** section.
- Change the information
- Click the **Create maintenance** button
- > The new maintenance step is added.

#### Changing a maintenance step

To change a maintenance step, proceed as follows:

- In the Maintenances of the machine: {0} table, click the maintenance step that you would like to change
- > The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- > The maintenance step information is transferred to the **Create maintenance** section.
- Change the information
- Click the Change maintenance button
- > The changes are applied.

## Uploading a document, linking it with a maintenance event, or deleting a linkage

1	The procedure for uploading documents and linking them to a maintenance event, or the method for deleting document linkages, are identical to the procedure in the <b>Create maintenance step</b> submenu.
	<b>Further information:</b> "Create maintenance step submenu (software option)", Page 123

#### Deleting a maintenance step

To delete a maintenance step, proceed as follows:

- In the Maintenances of the machine: {0} table, click the maintenance step that you would like to delete
- > The selected maintenance step is highlighted in green in the table.
- Click the **Delete maintenance** button
- Click the **Yes** button in the dialog box
- > The maintenance step is deleted from the table.



## **Evaluations menu**

## 9.1 Evaluations menu

In the **Evaluations** menu, StateMonitor displays data obtained from the machines in tables and charts.

The **Evaluations** menu includes the following submenus:

- Machine statuses
- Key figures
- Program run times
- Machine reports
- Job times (software option)
- Signals (software option)
- Maintenances (software option)
- Time filter

In the **Machine statuses** submenu, StateMonitor displays the machine statuses in chronological order in machine status bars and calculates the **Availability** and **Utilization rate** values.

In the **Key figures**, **Program run times**, **Machine reports**, and **Signals** submenus, StateMonitor lists the corresponding data in tables.

In the optional **Job times** submenu, StateMonitor lists the machining times and workpiece quantities that have been entered for the individual jobs. If an hourly rate is stored for the machine, then StateMonitor also displays the costs per job and working step here.

In the optional **Maintenances** submenu, StateMonitor lists the recorded data on performed maintenance events and resolved malfunctions per machine.

In the **Time filter** submenu, you can limit the evaluation to certain periods of time.



The role of the user determines which submenus and functions StateMonitor displays.

**Further information:** "User management submenu", Page 150

#### Saving Evaluations

In all of the submenus, with the exception of **Time filter**, you can save the current evaluation under **My evaluations**.

If you tick the box next to **Local**, then this evaluation is visible only with your login information. Other users will not see this evaluation.

If you do not tick the box next to **Local**, then the evaluation is visible for all users with **Authorization status StateMonitor User plus** or **Administrator**.

Proceed as follows to save your evaluation:

- Click My evaluations
- Enter the Evaluation name
- Tick the box next to Local as needed
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor saves the current evaluation and enters it in the Saved evaluations table.

My evalu	ations 🔻	
iave current evaluation		
Evaluation name	Local	
Save		
Saved evaluations Evaluation	Loca	al
	(T-	
statesEvaluation	Sec. 1	

#### Loading saved evaluations

Proceed as follows if you have already saved evaluations:

- Select the saved evaluations under My evaluations
- > StateMonitor loads the selection data from the saved evaluation into the view.

## 9.2 Machine statuses submenu

In the **Machine statuses** submenu, you can perform an Evaluation of machine statuses.

The following formats are available for evaluation:

Key figures of the evaluation period for all machines graph with the Availability and Utilization rate bar graphsUtilization rate

Further information: "Key figures submenu", Page 136

- Additional graph with the specifications of a selected machine status
- Machine status bars for each machine and day
- Bar graph for every machine status bar

Proceed as follows to display the machine statuses for a specific time:

- Switch to the **Evaluations** menu
- Select the Machine statuses submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- Select the time from ... to ...
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- ► Alternatively, select the date from ... to ...
- Click the **Refresh** button
- StateMonitor displays the machine statuses for the selected period.

## Key figures of the evaluation period for all machines graphKey figures of the evaluation period for all machines

This graphs shows, as percentages, all of the machine statuses of the selected machines within the selected period.

You can show an additional graph that lists the specifications of a machine status. For this purpose, proceed as follows:

- Click the desired machine status in the first graph
- StateMonitor displays the additional graph with the specifications for the machine status.

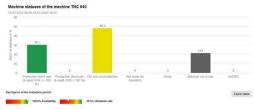
Further information: "Statuses submenu", Page 166

#### Showing detailed information

You can show detailed information for each section of the machine status bar. For this purpose, proceed as follows:

- Click a section of the machine status bar
- StateMonitor displays a window containing detailed information about the machine status and any comments.





#### Showing the bar chart

For each machine status bar, a bar chart is available. The bar chart is grouped by key figures and indicates the percentage of the respective machine statuses.

To view a bar chart, proceed as follows:



- Click the chart icon next to the machine status bar.
- > The bar chart is displayed.
- If an additional machine status specification exists, StateMonitor highlights that bar in bold.
   Further information: "Replacing and specifying machine statuses", Page 70
- To display the specifications (subcategories), click the bar.
- > The data is displayed as a separate bar.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

#### Saving the evaluation

You can save the current evaluation under **My evaluations**. **Further information:** "Saving Evaluations", Page 132

## 9.3 Key figures submenu

In the **Key figures** submenu, you can evaluate the key figures for selected machines. For a defined period, StateMonitor calculates the **Availability** and **Utilization rate** values based on the incoming machine statuses.

Further information: "Availability", Page 137 Further information: "Utilization rate", Page 138

#### **Displaying key figures**

Proceed as follows to select the key figures for selected machines:



- Switch to the **Evaluations** menu
- Select the Key figures submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- Select a time from ... until ...
- Or
- Select the Time filter (if available)
   Further information: "Time filter submenu", Page 144
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- Alternatively, select a date from ... to ...
- For the selected machines and in the selected period, StateMonitor displays the following key figures in the table:
  - Availability
  - Utilization rate
  - Productive time
  - Scheduled busy time
  - Busy time
  - Total down time

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

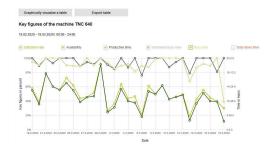
#### Graphically visualize a table

For each selected machine, StateMonitor displays the key figures in a separate graphic.

You can save the current evaluation under My evaluations.

Further information: "Saving Evaluations", Page 132

đ	888	Q	B	*	-11	ö							
												8	and Admenistrator
in hine stati			e lines	dectore sizens	ich lines	Signals 1		Time Siles					
Ivaluatio	s of the key fi	gures											
	Mattine			free Alle		24.00 ~			m from III 1		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Rabash	
	ThC 640		_										
	ONC PILO	T 640		Time litter									
	TNC 629												
	TNC 529												
	_		_										
	Orange grand 1			Key figure								Feet	
	gradite			ray spare									
				0.00	_	Machine		Australia	Ultimize sets	Productive time	Schebald key line	Total dawn time	facts firme
	Wy realize	tees 🐨		Ved. 19.02		TNC 540	1	10,375	57.95	13.19.15	22-41-44	115.38	22.41.44
				7% 20.02		ThC 64	1.2	82.75	38.25	8.31.00	21.0.12	420.50	21.0.12
				PA 2182.2	100	TNC 540		102%	75.9%	18 50 23	24 00 00	0.00.00	24 00 00
				Set. 22.02.2	929	110.640		12.1%	00,2%	14.25.12	24.00.00	14222	24 00:00
				9un 23.02	2920	110.540		100%	55.0%	10.21.10	2410.00	0.00.00	24.00.00
				Mark 24.62		110.640		100%	72.4%	15.20.06	213626	2 29 33	2138.26
				Tue 25.82		TNC 540	8	100%	41.7%	13.12.04	212144	23615	2123.44
				Wed 26.02		TNC 640		85.9%	43,7%	8.16.33	51.615	51258	21 12 57
				The 27.62		110.540	8	11.05	45,2%	10.52.23	21 33 43	129.25	24 38 00
				Pix 28 82 2		THC 640		102%	10%	2143.30	24.00.00	4 20 42	21 33 43
				Sun (1.00)		110,540		90.7%	215	55013	22.26.54	23836	22.28.54
				101.01.02		100,000		10.74	144	100.0	11.0174	1.4.4	0.0034
				Graphical	ly simular a	failth	Export	-					



#### Availability

Generally, the availability is the time during which a system is available.

The availability of the machine is calculated from the ratio of the main usage time relative to the scheduled busy time.

The main usage time is the total time minus all down times.

Availability = Total period under - Total down time Scheduled busy time

The scheduled busy time is the total time minus the time during which the machine is switched off.

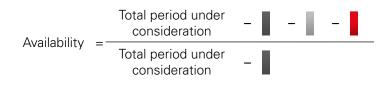
Total period under consideration
Time during which the machine is not operated

	<u> </u>
	Scheduled busy time (= time during which the
=	machine is operated)

The total down time results from the following sum:

+	Time during which the machine is not ready for opera- tion
+	Delay
	Time during which the machine is not operated

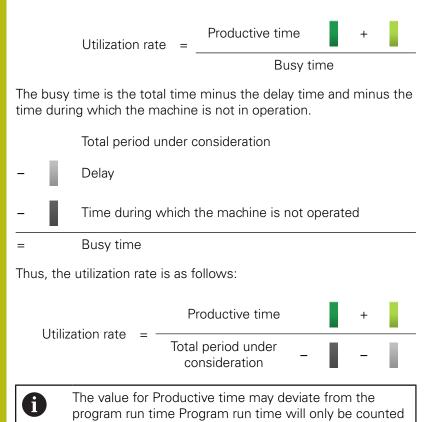
Thus, the availability is as follows:



### **Utilization rate**

The utilization rate basically is the ratio of the actually attainable value of a reference value relative to the maximum possible value of this reference value.

In respect of the machine utilization, the utilization rate is the ratio of the productive time relative to the busy time of the machine.



as productive time if the override values are at least 1%.

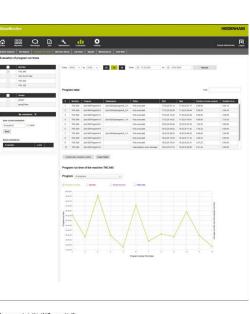
### 9.4 Program run times submenu

In the **Program run times** submenu, you can evaluate the run times of the NC programs of selected machines.

Proceed as follows to evaluate **Program run times**:

- Switch to the **Evaluations** menu
- Select the **Program run times** submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- ▶ Select the time from ... to ...
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- Alternatively, select the date from ... to ...
- In the table, StateMonitor lists the programs that ran in the selected period.

You can save the current evaluation under **My evaluations**. **Further information:** "Saving Evaluations", Page 132





#### Graphically visualize a table

In terms of their functionality, the program table and its graphical visualizations are equivalent to the **Program run times** submenu in the **Machines** menu under **Machine status**.

Further information: "Program run times submenu", Page 82



In contrast to the **Machines** menu, the **Evaluations** menu allows you to visualize and compare the charts of multiple machines at the same time. StateMonitor lists all of the graphs one below the other.

## 9.5 Machine reports submenu

In the **Machine reports** submenu, you can list certain messages in a defined period for selected machines.

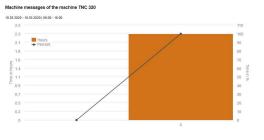
Proceed as follows to list Machine reports:

- .....
- Switch to the Evaluations menu
- Select the Machine reports submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- ▶ Select the time from ... to ...
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- Alternatively, select the date from ... to ...
- Select Error classes, Error groups, Information
- Click the **Refresh** button
- In a table, StateMonitor lists all of the machine messages that occurred in the selected period on the selected machine and that belong to the selected Error classes, Error groups, or Information.
- To show bar graphs for the table, click the Graphically visualize a table button
- > StateMonitor visualizes the data from the table in a bar graph for each machine.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

You can save the current evaluation under **My evaluations**. **Further information:** "Saving Evaluations", Page 132

	2			h	•				
	senger			utor				Ortas	Adventure 1
valuation of the machine m									
Viachine			From 06.00 ~	10	12:00 - 94 34 74 Fram 11	16.83 2020	N 11	18-03-2020	
TNC 640									
CNC PILOT 640			Error classes		Error groups	Information			
TNC 620					errer groups	P FN01 (2			
V TNC 320			Energency II Error (0)	ID(1)		<ul> <li>FN 38-30</li> </ul>	101		
			Warring (2)		PLC (1) General information (0)	Program successfully completed (4)     Program interrupted by user (70)			
Groups			Program can	celatio	(0) Remote (1) Python (1)	Program	interrupted by eno	r message (4)	
group t			Program stag Feed rate sto	00464	None (1)				
group2Vev			Fieset (1) None (0)						
		_							
My evaluations		_							
Save current evaluation			Select a		A				
Evaluation name									
Seve		Deselect		a boars					
				ietres?					
Saved evaluations									
Evaluation	Lecal							Fed	
AlamEvaluation		۲		_					
statesEvaluation programRuntmesEvaluation			Muchine		Ense	Error class	Crox group	Reported	Acknowledged
propartiturismetty weaton	۲	۲	TNC 640		This is a program canceled by user message			16.00.20 15 17 32	
			TNC 640		This is a program canceled by user message alared	-		17.03.20.07.49:04	17 43 20 11 12 14
			TNC 640 TNC 640		Aarmo This is a program canceled by error message	Note	Programmi	17.00.20.08.59.58	1/10/2011/202
			TNC 640		This is a program canceled by end message	-	- Programmi	17.00.20 12.20 28	17 03 29 14 50 8
			TNC 640	Ľ	This is a program canceled by error message	-	rioganin.	17.00.20 12.29.28	
			TNC 640		This is a important message, which should be read with care			18 00 20 11 59 51	
			TNC 640		This is a program completed message			18.00.20 11.59:51	
			CNC PILOT 6		This is a program cancelled by user message			16.03.20 11.10 11	
			CNC PILOT 6		This is a program canceled by user message			17.03.20.06 17.00	
			CNC PILOT 6		This is a program canceled by user message			17.03.20 15 14.34	
			CNC PILOT 6		This is a important message, which should be read with care			18.03.20 10.21 50	
			CNC PLOT 6		This is a program completed message			18.03.20 10.21 50	
			TNC 620		This is a program canceled by user message			16.03.20 14 14 55	
			TNC 620	-6	Aared	Repet	Python	15.03.20 15.01 19	10-03-20 17-01-5
			TNC 620		This is a program completed message			17.03.20 06 27.36	
			-	-					
			Graphically visual		able Export table				
			Graphically visual		Lipot data				



### 9.6 Job times submenu (software option)

In the **Job times** submenu, you can evaluate recorded data related to your production jobs.

The following formats are available for evaluation:

- The Jobs table lists all jobs corresponding to the search criteria with their total duration
- The Working steps for selected job table contains all working steps for the selected job as well as the associated durations, the actual parts and scrap counts for produced parts and the machine on which the step was performed
- The bar chart visualizes the following durations: preparation time, production time and undefined time
- The Entries for working step table contains detailed information on each job status that occurred in the selected working step

If hourly rates are saved for the selected machines in the settings, then StateMonitor also shows the costs per job and working step here.

To evaluate the recorded data, proceed as follows:



i

- Switch to the Evaluations menu
- Select the Job times submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- Select the time from ... to ...
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- Alternatively, select the date from ... to ...
- If required, enter the Job number, Part name, or Part number in the Find field
- To restrict the search to fully completed jobs, tick the Show only completed jobs option
- Click the **Refresh** button
- In the table, StateMonitor lists all of the jobs that correspond to the search criteria.
- Click a job in the **Jobs** table
- The Working steps for selected job table opens.
- Click a working step in the Working steps for selected job table
- > The Entries for working step table opens.
- To show a bar graph for the Working steps for selected job table, click the Graphically visualize a table button

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46



## 9.7 Signals submenu (software option)

In the **Signals** submenu, you can evaluate machine signals. Precondition: the affected signals are configured in StateMonitor. **Further information:** "Configuring signals", Page 160

To evaluate signals, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Evaluations menu
   Select the Signals submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the boxes in front of machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- Select a time from ... to ...
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- Alternatively, select a date from ... to ...
- Click the **Refresh** button
- In a table, StateMonitor lists the signals that occurred during the selected period.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

You can save the current evaluation under **My evaluations**. **Further information:** "Saving Evaluations", Page 132

	<u>a</u>		. <u></u>	2					
-	Anglans Pagana	un bren a	14 A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	Manhouse Tere His					
ignal evolu	ation								
	Tester.		and to be loss of		18 Feet (0 1610-260	N 2 0830			
12	ThC 628		100 V N 100 V		AND D ANDOR		Refresh		
	Ph008							Feet	
	Debende		Votes Martin	Ser.	Decision and	Incom	Spra prop	Market To cardinal	
	750.040			Sept	Temperature candle 1	1410	Temporature	HEDENHAR DAG	
	Erlanded Hompson Control Villamon 5001	1	< THC 628	Serg2	Separate standa be	562	bepeaters	HECENHIN SNC	
	Farma C.D.	104	sphically visualize a table	Exportable					
	Relia particular								
	EVCLOR Tanky	50	als of the machine TNC	620					
	Orman								
	Smuletur	8	hangi 🕑 hangi					0	
_	Residence V	_						May 19 2020 To May 19 2020	
_		-			NAMES OF TAXABLE PARTY.			NO. 4041. 10 100 10 1001	
for ores				Serger B					
	ane Come			tange a	and d spinde beempil			A 101 M	
Ano:			10.00	1.1			1 N		
Samt make				(1) (h.,		11	1 bat	1	
-	144		ALL A DA		AUTINAL TRA	0 1 1 1 1			
(a) and	404 T D				• YILLI VI. I UN			A	
				M . I VIVI			N 11 M M		
			IN IN	. PW 1	MAN KU . MARAN I		WANK IN 18 1	MALL	
							1 N V V 1 1 1	WVW	
			11 ' '		1. VII 1	/ W'II''			
			V III						
								101 m	

# 9.8 Maintenances submenu (software option)

In the **Maintenances** submenu, you can evaluate the recorded data on performed maintenance events and resolved malfunctions.

The following formats are available for evaluation:

- The table lists the performed maintenance events and resolved malfunctions that correspond to the search criteria
- The Duration of maintenances and disturbances graph visualizes, for each machine, the planned and actual duration of a maintenance event and the duration of a malfunction

To evaluate the recorded data, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the **Evaluations** menu
- Select the Maintenances submenu
- Select the desired machines (tick the boxes in front of machine names)
- Alternatively, select groups (tick the boxes in front of group names)
- Select a time from ... to ...
- Select the number of days (counting back from the current day)
- Alternatively, select a date from ... to ...
- Click the Refresh button
- In a table, StateMonitor lists all of the maintenance events and malfunctions that correspond to the search criteria.
- To show the graph, click the desired entry in the table
- Click the Graphically visualize a table button
- StateMonitor shows the Duration of maintenances and disturbances graph.

Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46



## 9.9 Time filter submenu

In the **Time filter** submenu, you can define the periods during which the recorded data are to be considered for the evaluation. This makes it possible to exclude planned downtimes (e.g., shift changes or breaks) when calculating the key figures (see "Key figures submenu", Page 136).

In the **Time filter** submenu, you can:

- Create time filters
- Change time filters
- Delete time filters

#### **Create time filters**

For each day of the week, you can define up to four periods during which the recorded data are to be considered. You can define these periods separately for every weekday or for the entire week (selection field under **Apply to all days:**).

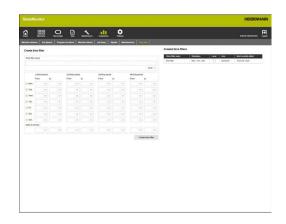
If you tick the box next to **Local**, then this time filter will be visible only with your login information. Other users will not be able to see this time filter.

If you do not tick the box next to **Local**, then the time filter will be visible for all users with **Authorization status StateMonitor User plus** or **Administrator**.

To create a new time filter, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the **Evaluations** menu
- Select the **Time filter** submenu
- Enter the name of the time filter in the Timer filter name field
- Tick the box next to Local as needed
- Define up to four periods per weekday with the
   From: ... to: ... selection fields
- Alternatively, define up to four periods for the entire week in the **Apply to all days:** selection fields
- Click the Add time filter button
- > The time filter appears in the **Created time filters** table.

StateMonitor offers only complete hours in the **from ... to ...** selection field. To change the minute values, you can edit the offered values directly in the input field.



i

#### **Changing time filters**

To change a time filter, proceed as follows:

- In the Created time filters table, click the time filter that you would like to change
- > The selected time filter is highlighted in green in the table.
- > The time filter's data are transferred to the **Add time filter** section.
- Change the information
- Click the Save time filter button
- > The changes are applied.

#### **Deleting time filters**

To delete a time filter, proceed as follows:

- In the Created time filters table, click the time filter that you would like to delete
- > The selected time filter is highlighted in green in the table.
- Click the Delete time filter button
- > The time filter is deleted from the table.

10

# Settings menu

## 10.1 Settings menu

The **Settings** menu contains the following submenus:

- User settings
- User management
- Machines
- Add groups
- Machine mapping
- Statuses
- Messenger settings
- File backup
- External reporting DB
- Advanced
- Info

6

The role of the user determines which submenus and functions StateMonitor displays.

Further information: "User management submenu", Page 150

## 10.2 User settings submenu

### Changing the password



0

Every user can change his or her user password at any time.

Proceed as follows to change your user password:

- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the User settings submenu
- > Your user name is shown in the **User name** field.
- Enter your current password in the Old password field
- Enter your new password in the New password field
- Re-enter your new password in the Repeat password field
- Click the Changing the password button
- > StateMonitor changes the password.

### Forgot your password?

If user has lost his or her password, the administrator can reset it. **Further information:** "Resetting passwords", Page 153

### Change language settings for user

Each user can individually set the language in StateMonitor.

Proceed as follows to set the language setting for users:

٥

i

A

- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the User settings submenu
- Select the user language
- Click the Save the change button
- > StateMonitor changes the user language.

The language settings of all the other users remain unaffected by this setting.

You can change the system language in the **Advanced** submenu. The system language applies to all users in whose **User settings** the **System language** setting is selected.

**Further information:** "Changing the system language", Page 184

	StateMonitor	6							HEIDEN
Okreji Ja Javis         Ware	<u>ن</u>	a	0 1		0				Default Admentituder
Okreji Ja Javis         Ware	Can settings   User m	angerent Enter	Add groups   1	an Adver many ling	Name and Address of the Owner of Street	Tie backup Co	dernal reporting 20	Crandia la	
Name of the second seco	Changing the pas								
Maratara Construction Construct	User name								
Name of the second seco	Oid parm-ord								
Charge Instance Concernment of the Concernment of t	New pace-world	-							
Change Inspage setting for user Text or an uppe	Report password								
Next are singup Texted		Changing the pass	wind						
Next are singup Texted	Change Incourse	ations for user							

## 10.3 User management submenu

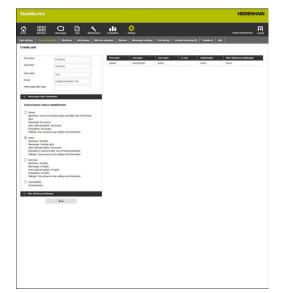
## Roles

The users of StateMonitor have different access rights and editing rights based on their role.

You can assign the following roles to the users:

## StateMonitor authorization status

	Menu	Authorization
Viewer	Machines	No editing rights
		Only access to <b>Machine status</b> , <b>Job terminal</b> (software option), and <b>Detailed view of the last 3</b> <b>days</b>
	Messenger	No access
	<b>Jobs</b> (software option)	No access
	Evaluations	No access
	Settings	Only access to <b>User settings</b> and <b>Info</b>
Users	Machines	All rights
	Messenger	No editing rights
	<b>Jobs</b> (software option)	No access
	Evaluations	Only access to <b>Day view</b> of the machine statuses
	Settings	Only access to <b>User settings</b> and <b>Info</b>
User	Machines	All rights
plus	Messenger	All rights
	<b>Jobs</b> (software option)	All rights
	Evaluations	All rights
	Settings	Only access to <b>User settings</b> and <b>Info</b>
Admin- istrator	All menus	All rights



## MaintenanceManager authorization status (software option)

	Menu/submenu	Authorization
Viewer	Machines	No editing rights Access to <b>Maintenance &amp;</b> malfunction
	Maintenance	Access to Tile view
	Maintenance terminal	No access

	Menu/submenu	Authorization
	Evaluations	No access
Users	Machines	Access to Maintenance & malfunction
	Maintenance	Access to Tile view
	Maintenance terminal	No access
	Evaluations	No access
User plus	Machines	Access to Maintenance & malfunction
	Maintenance	Access to <b>Tile view</b> and <b>Status</b> overview
	Maintenance terminal	Access to Maintenance status
	Evaluations	Access to Maintenance
Admin- istrator Mainte- nance Manag- er	All menus	All authorizations in the <b>Mainte</b> <b>nance</b> area



Only users with the administrator role can enter, change, and delete user data.

## Create user

To create a user inStateMonitor, proceed as follows:

- ٥
- Switch to the Settings menu
- Enter the following data in the User management submenu:
  - First name
  - Last name
  - User name
  - E-mail
- Select the desired option in the Authorization status StateMonitor pull-down menu
- If applicable, select the desired option in the Role: MaintencanceManager pull-down menu
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor writes the created user to the user list.
- StateMonitor sends the user the password by email.

Every user can change his or her password at any time.

Further information: "User settings submenu", Page 149

Both the  $\ensuremath{\textit{User}}$  name and the  $\ensuremath{\textit{Password}}$  are required for  $\ensuremath{\textit{Login}}.$ 

Further information: "Home menu", Page 50

Users receive notifications at their stated e-mail address, as specified in the **Messenger** menu.

Further information: "Messenger menu", Page 89

If the machine assignment is active, then no machines are initially assigned to the new user. You can perform the assignment in the **Machine mapping** submenu. **Further information:** "Machine mapping submenu", Page 165

## Editing user data

To change user data later, proceed as follows:



i

- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the **User** submenu
- In the list of users, select the user whose data you want to edit
- StateMonitor highlights the user and loads the data into the input fields.
- Make the changes
- Click the Save changes button
- StateMonitor transfers the edited data to the user list.



#### **Deleting users**

To delete a user in StateMonitor, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the User submenu
- In the user list, select the user whom you would like to delete
- > StateMonitor highlights the user and loads the data into the input fields.
- Click the **Deleting users** button
- > StateMonitor removes the user from the list.

#### **Resetting passwords**

If a user has forgotten his or her password, then a user with administrator role can reset the user's password.

Proceed as follows to reset a password:

- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the **User** submenu
- In the list of users, select the user whose password you want to reset
- StateMonitor highlights the user and loads the data into the input fields.
- Click the Reset the password button
- StateMonitor resets the password and sends an e-mail with the new password to the affected user.
- > The user is able to change the password.

6

Ö.

If there is no saved e-mail address, then the password appears in a pull-down window and must be communicated to the user in some other way.

## 10.4 Machines submenuMachines

In the **Machines** submenu, you can create new machines and edit existing machines.



This function is only accessible to users with the Administrator role.

## Create machine

## Creating a new machine

To create a new machine in StateMonitor, proceed as follows:



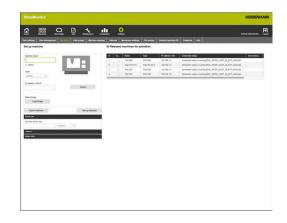
- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the Machines submenu
- Enter the name of the machine in the Machine name field
- Select the **Type** (control)
- Make the required settings for the selected machine type "Machine parameters"
- Next to IP address / DHCP, enter the IP address (eth0) or the hostname of the machine; for OPC UA, enter the value for Endpoint URL
- Click the Check button
- StateMonitor checks the network connection to the machine.
   Further information: "Testing the network

connection", Page 155

- If you have a picture of your machine, click the Load image button
- Select the image file in Windows Explorer
- StateMonitor loads the selected image into the view.
- Click the Set up machine button
- > The machine is saved in the machine list.
- Tick the box in the **Active** column
- Select the created machine in the machine list
- > StateMonitor highlights the machine.
- Click the Save machine button
- The machine is now visible in the Machines menu.

i	
Ľ	

If you check the box in the **Active** column, then StateMonitor displays the machines in the **Machines** menu.



#### Testing the network connection



If the network connection test is not successful, the following error message will be displayed: "Invalid IP address"

If the network connection could not be established, check the following:

- Has the machine's IP address been entered correctly?
- Is the server or PC on which StateMonitor is installed connected with the local corporate network?
- ▶ Is the machine connected to the local company network?
- Further information: "Network integration", Page 193

Once a network connection has been established between the machine and StateMonitor, the control transmits the **SIK** number and the software version of the **NC software** to StateMonitor.

StateMonitor enters the **SIK** number and the software version of the **NC software** into the corresponding columns of the overview table.

#### Details on the Connection status columnConnection status

In the **Connection status** column of the machine list, StateMonitor displays the current connection status for each machine. The following connection statuses may be displayed:

Connection status	Cause	
Connection was successfully established	Machine is connected with StateMonitor	
Automatic connection setup	Connection setup is running	
No connection. Activation is required.	Connection interrupted	
	After three lost connections within five minutes, no new attempt will be made to establish a connection (network is not stable)	
Connection separated	No connection between machine and StateMonitor	
	Machine was deactivated in StateMonitor	

Following the connection status, StateMonitor shows the associated DNC status message in brackets. The following DNC status messages may be displayed:

DNC status message	Meaning	Cause
DNC STATE NOT INITIALIZED	Machine is in the start status Machine has not yet been initial- ized	Connection has not yet been estab- lished
DNC STATE HOST IS NOT AVAILABLE	Machine cannot be reached via PING	Machine is switched off or discon- nected from the network
DNC STATE HOST IS AVAILABLE	Machine can be reached via PING	Machine is starting, NC is starting, DNC is already available
DNC STATE DNC IS AVAILABLE	DNC is available	Machine is starting, NC and DNC have not yet been started
DNC STATE WAITING PERMISSION	Waiting for permission	Client is waiting for a permission for <b>External access</b>
DNC STATE MACHINE IS BOOTED	Machine has booted NC software is loaded; PLC is not yet compiled	Machine has booted and is waiting for acknowledgement of the power interruption with <b>CE</b>
DNC STATE MACHINE IS INITIALIZING	Machine is being initialized	PLC is being compiled
DNC STATE MACHINE IS AVAILABLE	Machine is fully booted and ready	Machine is ready, all DNC functions are available
DNC STATE MACHINE IS SHUTTING	Machine is shutting down	Machine shutdown has been initiat- ed
DNC STATE DNC IS STOPPED	Machine is shutting down, DNC has stopped	DNC has been ended as part of shutting down
DNC STATE HOST IS STOPPED	Machine has shut down	Connection has been lost
		Machine has shut down and is no longer available
DNC STATE NO PERMISSION	No permission	<b>External access</b> is blocked (MOD function)
		Permission request for <b>External</b> access was denied
		Permission request for <b>External access</b> is pending but has not been

acknowledged

## Troubleshooting connecting problems

If three lost connections occur within five minutes, this is an indication that the network is unstable. In this case, no further connection attempts will be made. StateMonitor displays the connection status

#### No connection. Activation is required.

Proceed as follows to initiate the establishment of a new connection:

- Deactivate the machine
- Click the Save machine button
- Reactivate the machine
- Click the Save machine button
- > StateMonitor retries to establish the connection.

If a client sends a permission request for **External access**, then the window shown to the right appears on the control.

#### Details on the Error message columnError message

In the **Error message** column of the machine list, StateMonitor displays a DNC error message when there are connection problems.

The following DNC error messages may be displayed:

DNC error message	Meaning	Cause
DNC_E_DNC_PROHIBITED	DNC blocked	<b>External access</b> is blocked (MOD function)
		Permission request for <b>External</b> <b>access</b> was denied
DNC_E_FAIL	DNC failure	Firewall is blocked
DNC_E_OPTION_NOT_AVAILABLE	DNC option is not available	Option 18, HEIDENHAIN DNC, is not available
DNC_E_NOT_POS_NOW	DNC is presently not possible	Currently, DNC connections cannot be established (e.g. if the machine is shutting down)
DNC32_E_NOT_CONN	No connection to the machine	Machine is switched off or not connected to the network
TIMEOUT	Timeout in the network	StateMonitor sent a request, but the controls is not responding (check connection)



## Edit machine

### **Editing existing machines**

To edit the data of an existing machine in StateMonitor, proceed as follows:

- Settings
- Switch to the Settings menu
- ► Select the Machines submenu
- Select the machine in the machine list
- > StateMonitor loads the data into the input fields.
- > StateMonitor displays the available machine parameters in the pull-down menu.
- Change the data
- Click the Save machine button
- StateMonitor saves the machine with the edited data.

				<u>.</u>		I tone water to	1 E-miles   141	Default Administration
Edit machine	strend Descented D	ant could be could		eased machines fo		Biomiscon In	d Deitersteid Devel (	
Machine same '				A_ Net	194		Converdion status	Env mess
CNE PLOT 640	- I V		1	ONCRACES	THE SAD	102 106 1 2	Connection service is running (DAC_STATE_HOST_ID_NOT_HANKA Connection service is running (DAC_STATE_HOST_ID_NOT_HANKA	
			2	This 620	750 525	182 198 1.4	Connector rates a serving ENC. STATE HOLT, 5 NOT, ANNUA	
Tube" CNC PEOT 648			4		TNC 320	192.108.1.5	Connection service is surviving (DNC_STATE_HOST_IS_NOT_AUXO	
			-					
Patters/DrCP*		Check						
182.168.1.3		Links						
Termit maps								
Load mape								
Owlete machine	Export machine	Save machine						
Test Inte								
Marky 108 Machine hours 1998								
	Currency							
	Currancy							
Machine hours rate	Currency							
Nachine hours rate	Carang							
Nachre horb 199 Genera Heder des Conscion sellings Typels	Carrany							
Hachine houty spin Camera Washer data	Careny	x]						
Nachre horb 199 Genera Heder des Conscion sellings Typels	Carrency	2						
Nachre horb 199 Genera Heder des Conscion sellings Typels	Currency							
Machine Nou's 1919 Gamma Machine Ada Connocilier andings Digush	Currency -	x]:						
Machine Nou's 1919 Gamma Machine Ada Connocilier andings Digush	Genery							
Machine Nou's 1919 Gamma Machine Ada Connocilier andings Digush	Currency							
Machine Nou's 1919 Gamma Machine Ada Connocilier andings Digush	Currency	2						

### **Machine parameters**

Depending on the machine type and the control, the following parameters are available:

Parameter	Explanation
Override acquisi- tion (optional)	Only for HEIDENHAIN controls iTNC 530; see "Settings for Override acquisition (only with iTNC 530)", Page 229
PLC password (optional)	Only for HEIDENHAIN controls; see "Settings for PLC password", Page 227
Hourly rate	Value of the hourly rate (with curren- cy); is used for calculating the costs per job and working step in the optional <b>Job</b> <b>times</b> submenu; see "Job times submenu (software option)", Page 141
Camera	IP address of a camera whose live image is displayed in the <b>Machine status</b> submenu
Master data	Administrative information about the machine
Simulation	Only for <b>Simulation</b> type:
properties	Number of days
(optional)	Past period for which the simulation data are generated
	Statuses per day
	The number of the status changes for the generated simulation data
	Seed for random numbers
	Starting value for random number generator
	Generate fake data when saving
	This option works only during creation of the simulation
	Continually generate new data
	Default setting
	Mean status time in seconds
	Period for status time
Signals (optional)	Definition of signals for access to PLC variables
Connection settings (optional)	Only for Modbus, OPC UA, and MTConnect <b>Further information:</b> "Parameters for other
Status parameter for mapping (optional)	controls", Page 230
Machine messages / alarms	Definition of messages based on recorded signals
(optional)	

## **Configuring signals**

Signals are read directly by the PLC and can be evaluated accordingly.

**Further information:** "Signals submenu (software option)", Page 142

You can use the following parameters for the configuration of the signals:

Parameter	Manda- tory field	Explanation
Name	$\checkmark$	Unique name
Group		Name of a group of signals
Address	$\checkmark$	Path to the signal that is to be recorded
Description		Additional information
Data type	1	Possible values:
		Number (number)
		Text (string)
		Boolean value (0 or 1)
Factor		Conversion factor for signal value
Decimal places		Number of decimal places used
Text before the value		Specification of a prefix
Text after the value (physi- cal unit)		Specification of the physical unit of the signal value
Threshold value		A threshold value below or above which the new signal value is trans- ferred to the database
Polling inter- val		Internal for polling

With the **Check the signals** button, you can call the current value of the selected signal.

With the **Export** button, you can save the configured signal parameters as an XML file.

With the **Import** button, you can create new signals in StateMonitor by importing the signal parameters from an XML file. The previously configured signals remain unaffected by this.

#### **Configuring machine alarms**

For the signals that you evaluate in StateMonitor, you can configure machine alarms. To do so, you can define conditions for the comparison of the signal value with a comparison value. When a condition is fulfilled, StateMonitor displays a machine alarm in the **Messenger** menu.

The following parameters are required for the configuration of a machine alarm:

Parameter	Manda- tory field	Explanation
#	1	Alarm number
Name	1	Unique name
Fehlergruppe		Possible values:
		None
		operation
		Programming
		PLC
		General information
		Remote
		Python
Fehlerklasse		Possible values:
		None
		Warning
		Feed rate stopped
		Program stop
		Program cancellation
		Emergency stop
		Reset
		Info
		Failure description
		Note
Link to signal	$\checkmark$	Selection of the signal
Description		Additional information
Data type		Data type of the signal
		Possible values:
		Number (number)
		Text (string)
		Boolean value (0 or 1)
Operator		Selection of the operator for the comparison of a signal value and a comparison value (based on the selection in the <b>Data type</b> field)

Parameter	Manda- tory field	Explanation
		Possible values:
		<ul> <li>EQUALS: Signal value is equivalent to comparison value</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>contains: Signal value contains comparison value</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>STARTSWITH: Signal value begins with comparison value</li> </ul>
		LESSTHAN: Signal value is less than comparison value
		<ul> <li>LESSTHANEQUAL: Signal value is less than or equal to comparison value</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>MORETHAN: Signal value is greater than comparison value</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>MORETHANEQUAL: Signal value is greater than or equal to comparison value</li> </ul>
Value		Comparison value
Create test notification		If this option is activated, then State- Monitor generates a test machine message when the machine alarm is saved

With the **Check parameter** button, you can call the current value of the selected signal and start the comparison.

With the  $\ensuremath{\text{Export}}$  button, you can save the configured machine alarms as an XML file.

With the **Import** button, you can create new machine alarms in StateMonitor by importing the parameters from an XML file. The previously configured machine alarms remain unaffected by this.

## **Deleting machines**

To delete a machine in StateMonitor, proceed as follows:

•

Settings

- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the **Machines** submenu
- Select the machine in the machine list
- Click the Delete machine button
- StateMonitor deletes the selected machine from the list.
- > The machine is no longer visible in the **Machines** menu.

## 10.5 Add groups submenu

## Creating a machine group



This function is only accessible to users with the Administrator role.

Machines can be collected into machine groups. You can use a machine group in the **Machines** menu as a filter criterion in order to adapt the view. You can also assign jobs to a machine group. The jobs then appear in the **Job terminal** of each machine of the machine group and can be accepted and machined by each of these machines.

To create a new group, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the Add groups submenu
- Enter the name of the machine group into the Group name field
- Under All machines, select the machines that you would like to add to the machine group
- Or, for multiple selections, press the Ctrl key, and select the machines



- Click the right arrow button
- StateMonitor adds the machines to the new machine group and enters them under Assigned machines.

To remove machines from the machine group, proceed as follows:

Under Assigned machines, select the machines that you would like to remove



- Click the left arrow button
- StateMonitor moves the selected machines back under All machines.

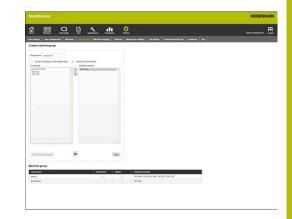
To add all of the machines to the machine group, proceed as follows:



- Click the right arrow button
- StateMonitor enters all of the machines under Assigned machines.

To select the intended use, proceed as follows:

- If the machine group in the Machines menu is to be available as a filter criterion, then tick the box in front of Use for the display in the machine park
- If the machine group is to be available in the menus for assigning and machining jobs, then tick the box in front of Use for the job terminal







At least one intended use must be selected in order for you to be able to save the machine group.

- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor adds the new machine group to the Machine group list.

### Editing a machine group

In order to edit a machine group, proceed as follows:



- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the **Add groups** submenu
- In the Machine group list, select the machine group that you would like to edit
- StateMonitor highlights the machine group and loads the data into the input fields.
- Make the changes
- Click the Save changes button
- StateMonitor transfers the changed data to the Machine group list.

## Deleting a machine group



The deletion of a machine group does not have any effect on the machine data in the **Machines** submenu. Only the grouping is deleted.

To delete a machine group, proceed as follows:

- •
- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the **Add groups** submenu
- In the Machine group list, select the machine group that you would like to delete
- StateMonitor highlights the machine group and loads the data into the input fields.
- Click the Delete machine group button
- StateMonitor removes the machine group from the Machine group list.

## 10.6 Machine mapping submenu

In the **Machine mapping** submenu, you can assign the machines to the individual users, who can access these machines in the **Machines**, **Messenger**, and **Evaluations** menus.



This function is only accessible to users with the Administrator role.

Proceed as follows to assign selected machines to a user:



- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the Machine mapping submenu
- Tick the box in front of Activate the assignment of users to machines



If the box next to **Activate the assignment of users to machines** is not ticked, then every user sees all of the activated machines.

- In the selection field, select Select the user
- Under All machines and/or under All machine groups, select the machines and machine groups that you would like to assign to the user
- Or, for multiple selections, press the Ctrl key, and select the machines.
- >
- Click the **right arrow** button
- StateMonitor assigns the machines and/or machine groups to the selected user and enters them under Assigned machines or Rejected machine groups.
- Click the Save button

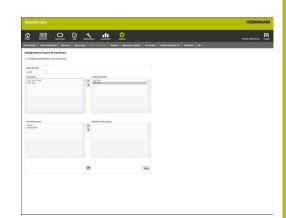
To remove an assignment, proceed as follows:

- Select the assigned machine or machine group
- Click the left arrow button
- StateMonitor moves the selected machine or machine group back under All machines or All machine groups.
- Click the Save button

To assign all of the machine to one user, proceed as follows:



- Click the **double right arrow** button
- StateMonitor moves all of the machines under Assigned machines.
- Click the Save button



## 10.7 Statuses submenu

In the **Statuses** submenu, you can add specifications that more closely describe a status. The specifications are available for selection in the **Machines** menu, allowing you to describe a machine status, a job status, or a malfunction.

Further information: "Edit machine statuses submenu", Page 69

**Further information:** "Job terminal submenu (software option)", Page 75

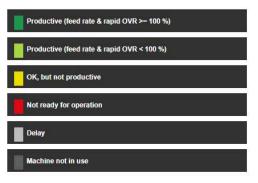
Further information: "Reporting malfunctions", Page 86

## Machine statuses

You can more precisely specify machine statuses by adding subcategories:

Color coding	Status	Explanation
Dark green	Produc- tive (feed rate & rapid traverse OVR >= 100%)	The machine is productive. The potentiometers for feed rate and rapid traverse are set to 100 % or more.
Light green	Produc- tive (feed rate & rapid traverse OVR < 100%)	The machine is productive. The potentiometers for feed rate and rapid traverse are set to 100 % or less.
Yellow	OK, but not productive	The machine is ready for opera- tion, but not productive.
Red	Not ready for operation	<ul> <li>The machine is not ready for operation.</li> <li>An emergency stop was triggered</li> <li>Error messages are pending</li> </ul>
Light gray	Delay	Can replace a yellow or dark gray machine status and specify it more precisely
Dark gray	Machine not in use	The machine is switched off

#### Machine statuses



#### Job statuses (software option)

You can more precisely define the following job statuses by adding subcategories:

- Created
- Assigned
- Locked / change
- Rejected
- Started
- Prepare
- Production
- Interrupted
- Finished

#### Reasons for disturbance (software option)

Specifications added in the **Reasons for disturbance** section are subsequently available for selection as reasons for disturbance for the reporting of disturbances. You can use the available categories in order to group specifications.



In order to be able to report disturbances in StateMonitor, at least one specification (reason for disturbance) must be added in the **Reasons for disturbance** section.

#### Adding specifications

In order to add a specification, proceed as follows:

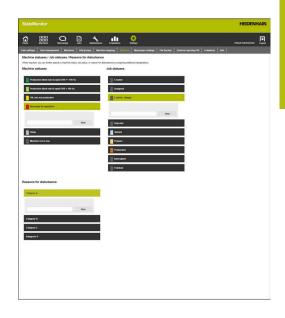
- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the Statuses submenu
- Click the desired status or category
- > StateMonitor opens the input field.
- Enter the designation for the specification
- Click the New button
- StateMonitor lists the new specification in a list above the input window.
- The specification is available for selection in the Machines menu.

#### Job statuses



#### Reasons for disturbance

Category A	
Category B	
Category C	
Kategorie D	



## Changing the sequence of the specifications

By clicking the arrow symbol, you can change the sequence of the specifications.



 $\nabla$ 

- Click the up arrow
- StateMonitor moves the specification one place up in the list.
- Click the down arrow
- StateMonitor moves the specification one place down in the list.

## **Deleting specifications**

Proceed as follows to delete a specification:



- Click the recycle bin icon
- StateMonitor deletes the specification from the list.

## 10.8 Messenger settings submenu

In the **Messenger settings** submenu, enter the connection data for the e-mail server that sends the notifications from StateMonitor to the user.

Prerequisite: e-mail server

To specify Messenger settings, proceed as follows:

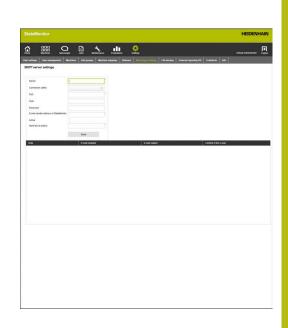
A

- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the Messenger settings submenu
- Specify the connection parameters
- Click the Save button
- > StateMonitor saves the configuration of the connection to the SMTP server.
- StateMonitor sends a test e-mail to the entered e-mail address.
- Confirm receiving the test e-mail
- > StateMonitor activates the configuration.

The connected e-mail server must support 8-bit ASCII coding. This also applies to the SMTP sever, which is run through until the goal is reached.

The following parameters are available:

Parameter	Explanation
Server	Server name of the e-mail server
Connection safety	Type of encryption to be used for the communication, depends on the default setting made by the e-mail provider:
	<ul> <li>None: Communication is not encrypted</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>STARTTLS: The communication starts in an unencrypted state until the e-mail server suggests transport encryption Only then, an encrypted communication will be established</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>SSL/TLS: The communication is encrypted end-to- end</li> </ul>
Port	SMTP port for communication, depends on the selected <b>Connection safety</b> setting:
	25 for None
	587 for <b>STARTTLS</b>
	465 for <b>SSL/TLS</b>
User	User name of the SMTP user
	If necessary, ask your e-mail provider
Password	Password of the SMTP user



Parameter		Explanation	
E-mail sender address of State- Monitor		E-mail address that StateMonitor uses for sending	
Active		Status of the configuration	
Send te to	ext e-mail	E-mail address to which StateMonitor sends a test e-mail	
6	connectio	AIN recommends the use of an encrypted n in order to protect the transferred data. n IT specialist if you are unsure.	

10

## 10.9 File backup submenu

By default, StateMonitor continuously saves all data until the memory is full. A corresponding message will then be sent to the administrator.



Irrespective of the automatic saving processes, HEIDENHAIN recommends running a daily data backup on the server or PC. In this way, you can prevent serious loss of data in the event of malfunctions.



## **Exporting data**

This function enables you to export the recorded machine data in CSV files. This allows you to import the machine data into a spreadsheet and further process it.



The machine data exported with this function cannot be imported back into StateMonitor. For restoring machine data based on a backup, see "Manually restoring the database", Page 174.

To perform a data export, proceed as follows:

- ₿
- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the File backup submenu
- In the Export data field, click the Export CSV files button
- Select the storage location
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor saves the backup file in the selected location for saving.

The backup file is a ZIP file containing the following CSV files:

- MachineDate.csv
- MachineStateHistory.csv

Do **not** rename the CSV files!

Ruon un Const 

## HEIDENHAIN | StateMonitor | Operating Instructions | 03/2020

## **Downloading log files**

If you consult the HEIDENHAIN Service department, you may require the log file of StateMonitor.

To download the log file, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the File backup submenu
- In the Download log files field, click the Download log file button
- Select the storage location
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor saves the log file in the selected location for saving.

## Automatic data backup

To have StateMonitor regularly perform an automatic backup of the database, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the File backup submenu
- In the Automatic backup of database field in the Path for saving the backup input field, enter the desired path where StateMonitor should save the backup (e.g., a server drive: C:\ProgramData\HEIDENHAIN\StateMonitor \backup)
- Select Time of day for saving the backup (e.g., 22:00 hrs.)
- Click the Generating button
- StateMonitor saves the data every day at 22:00 hrs. in the specified path.

## Automatic deletion of data

To periodically free up memory space, you can define how long historical data will be saved. Enter the desired number of days. Older data are automatically deleted byStateMonitor.

To configure automatic deletion of the data, proceed as follows:

- **Ö**
- Switch to the **Settings** menu
- Select the **File backup** submenu
- By default, the value "0" is in the Number of days ... input field: StateMonitor continuously saves the data until the memory is full.
- In the Automatic deletion of historical data field, enter the desired number of days that will be saved (e.g., 365 (1 year)) in the input field
- Click the Save button

StateMonitor regularly deletes all data that are older than 365 days.

Ö

#### Importing/exporting modeling data of the machines

When you install StateMonitor with an empty database for the first time, you can use the machine data and user data of an already existing instance of the software. For this purpose, you can export the modeling data of an already existing instance and import these data into the new instance of StateMonitor.

To export the modeling data, proceed as follows:

- Settings
- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the **File backup** submenu
- In the Export/Import modeling data of machines field, click the Export machines button
- Select the storage location
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor saves the backup file in the selected location for saving.

The backup file is a ZIP file containing the following CSV files:

- ConfigData.csv
- Machine.csv
- ModelingData.csv
- User.csv

To reimport the modeling data, click the **Import machines** button, and select the ZIP file.

## Manually restoring the database

If the database of StateMonitor is damaged, then you must manually reinstall the database. To do so, you must delete the damaged database and create a new database with the backup data.



Make sure that you have shut down StateMonitor.

To manually restore the database, proceed as follows:

- Under C:\ProgramData\HEIDENHAIN\StateMonitor\dat\backups, unpack the archive with the desired date
- Copy the uploads folder from the unpacked archive to the C:\ProgramData\HEIDENHAIN\StateMonitor\dat folder, overwriting the already existing uploads folder if applicable
- Start the pgAdmin4 program via the shortcut in the Start menu
- For connecting with the PostgreSQL server at the PostgreSQL 11 entry, double-click, and enter the password of the instance of StateMonitor
- The database of StateMonitor is shown in the directory tree of the PostgreSQL server under Databases > statemonitor.
- In the context menu of the statemonitor entry, select and confirm the Delete/Drop command
- > The damaged database is deleted.
- In the context menu of the Databases entry, select the Create > Database command
- In the Database input field, enter the statemonitor value and, in the Owner selection field, select the statemonitor entry
- > The new database is created.
- In the context menu of the statemonitor entry, select the Restore command
- In the Filename input field with the ... button, navigate to the unpacked archive
- Select the PostgreSQL.backup file, and apply it with the Select button
- Click the Restore button
- The saved data are imported into the new database
- Restart StateMonitor as needed.

## NOTICE

### Caution: Data may be lost!

If you have not created a backup of the database, and you delete the current database in the C:\ProgramData\HEIDENHAIN \StateMonitor\dat folder, then all previous data up to now, including the machine data, user data, etc., will be lost.

Back up the database regularly

## 10.10 External reporting DB submenu

Through the connection of an external reporting DB (database), StateMonitor can make recorded data available to other systems. StateMonitor supports the Microsoft SQL Server and PostgreSQL database systems.



StateMonitor will not export history data from the StateMonitor database to the external database.

In this manner, you can use the data recorded by StateMonitor for the following purposes:

- Correlation with data from ERP and MES systems
- Providing recorded data for the determination of OEE key figures
- Visualization of machine statuses in proprietary software

This function is only accessible to users with the Administrator role.

Precondition: server with a database system (Microsoft SQL Server or PostgreSQL)

To connect to an external database, proceed as follows:



i

- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the External reporting DB submenu
- In the selection field of the **Database**, select the database system being used
- Enter the connection parameters depending on the database system to be used
- Click the **Test** button to test the connection to the external database
- Click the Save button
- StateMonitor saves the configuration for connecting to the external database.

Based on your selection, StateMonitor creates the following tables in the database when first establishing a connection:

- MACHINE_DATA
- MACHINE_STATE_HISTORY_DATA
- JOB
- EDIT_JOBSTATE_HISTORY
- PROGRAM_HISTORY
- MACHINE_STATE_HISTORY
- MACHINE_MESSAGE
- MACHINE_ALARM
- MAINTENANCES
- SIGNALS



## Parameters for Microsoft SQL Server

If you select Microsoft SQL Server as your database system, the following parameters are available:

Parameter	Explanation
Database host	IP address or domain name of the database server
Database port	Port-Number, 0 to 65536
	Input not necessarily required
Instance name	Individual entry
Database name	Individual entry
Windows authentication	Activate/deactivate
Database users	Entry is required only if
Database password	Windows authentication is deactivat- ed or if StateMonitor is configured as a Windows service

## Parameters for PostgreSQL

If you select PostgreSQL as the database system, then the following parameters are available:

Parameter	Explanation
Database host	IP address or domain name of the database server
Database port	Port-Number, 0 to 65536
	Input not necessarily required
Database name	Individual entry
Database schema	Individual entry
Database users	Configurable user in PostgreSQL
Database password	Password for the configurable user in PostgreSQL

## **Tables**

The external reporting database has the following tables:

Table	Function
DATABASECHANGELOG	Migration for external reporting database
EDIT_JOBSTATE_HISTORY_V2	Free-text comment for job statuses Details see "Table structure for EDIT_JOBSTATE_HISTORY_V2", Page 178
JOB_V2	Job data
	Details see "Table structure for JOB_V2", Page 178
MACHINE_V2	Assignment of machine name to ID Details see "Table structure for MACHINE_V2", Page 178
MACHINE_ALARM_V2	Confirmable messages of machine Details see "Table structure for MACHINE_ALARM_V2", Page 179
MACHINE_DATA_V2	Machine data Details see "Table structure and parameters for MACHINE_DATA_V2", Page 180
MACHINE_ID_MAPPING_V2	Mapping of machine IDs to StateMonitor (for version < 1.3) Details see "Table structure for MACHINE_ID_MAPPING_V2", Page 181
MACHINE_MESSAGE_V2	Non-confirmable messages of the machine, generated by StateMonitor and FN 38 Details see "Table structure for MACHINE_MESSAGE_V2", Page 181
MACHINE_STATE_ HISTORY_DATA_V2	Machine data at the time of the status change (status light), structure like MACHINE_DATA_V2
	Details see "Table structure and parameters for MACHINE_DATA_V2", Page 180
MACHINE_STATE_	Status of the machine (status light)
HISTORY_V2	Details see "Table structure for MACHINE_STATE_HISTORY_V2", Page 181
MAINTENANCE_EXECUTION_V2	Active maintenance events
	Details see "Table structure for MAINTENANCE_EXECUTION_V2", Page 181
MAINTENANCE_V2	Maintenance configuration
	Details see "Table structure for MAINTENANCE_V2", Page 182
MAPPING_MAINTENANCE_ PROCESS_STEP_V2	Mapping of process_step_id to maintenance_id Details see "Table structure for MAPPING_MAINTENANCE_PRO- CESS_STEP_V2", Page 182
PROCESS_STEP_V2	Maintenance step configuration Details see "Table structure for PROCESS_STEP_V2", Page 182
PROGRAM_HISTORY_V2	
FROGRAM_HISTORI_V2	History of the program execution Details see "Table structure for PROGRAM_HISTORY_V2", Page 183
SIGNAL_CONFIGURATION_V2	Signal configuration
	Details see "Table structure for SIGNAL_CONFIGURATION_V2", Page 183

Table	Function
SIGNAL_DATA_V2	Signal data Details see "Table structure for SIGNAL_DATA_V2", Page 183

## **Table structures**

The tables of the external reporting database exhibit different structures that are described in the following.

### Table structure for EDIT_JOBSTATE_HISTORY_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
JOB_ID	Reference to ID column in JOB_V2 table	
NOTE	Explanatory text	
COMMENT	Comment	
ITEMID	ID number	
USER_ID	User who performed the job status change	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp	

## Table structure for JOB_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
NUMBER	Job number	
WORKSTEP	Working step	
ITEMNAME	Part name	
ITEMID	ID number	
DESCRIPTION	Description of the job	
TARGETQUANTITY	Nominal quantity	
OKQUANTITY	Actual unit quantity	
SCRAP	Scrap quantity	
REWORK	Rework quantity	
APPOINTMENT	Deadline	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp of the starting time in the DD.MM.YY hh:mm:ss format	
PRIORITY	Priority of the job Values: Extrem_HIGH, HIGH, NORMAL, LOW, EXTREM_LOW	
STATE	Status of the job Values: created, assigned, edit, returned, started, mount, in_progress, stopped, finished	

## Table structure for MACHINE_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
NAME	Name of the machine	
DELETED	Values: 1 (deleted) or 0 (not deleted)	

## Table structure for MACHINE_ALARM_V2

Column	<b>Value</b> ID	
ID		
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table	
IS_SET	Replaced by TIMESTAMPCLEARED	
NUMBER	Error number in raw format	
NUMBER_AUX	Error number displayed as on the control	
CHANNEL	Channel on the control	
ERROR_GROUP	Error group Values: dnc_eg_none, dnc_eg_operating, dnc_eg_pro- graming, dnc_eg_plc, dnc_eg_general, dnc_eg_remote, dnc_eg_python	
ERROR_CLASS	Error group Values: dnc_ec_none, dnc_ec_warning, dnc_ec_feedhold, dnc_ec_programhold, dnc_ec_programabort, dnc_ec_emer- gency_stop, dnc_ec_reset, dnc_ec_info, dnc_ec_error, dnc_ec_note	
DESCRIPTION	Error description	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp when an error occurs	
TIMESTAMPCLEARED	Timestamp when the error is acknowledged	

Column	Parameter	Value
ĽD		ID
IACHINE_ID		Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table
PARAMETER_NAME		Machine parameters with values from the column parameter_VALUE:
	Connected	1 (connected) or 0 (disconnected)
	ExecutionMode	Execution Values: dnc_exec_manual, dnc_exec_mdi, dnc_exec_rpf, dnc_exec_singlestep, dnc_exec_automatic, dnc_exec_other, dnc_exec_handwheel
	FMax	1 (rapid traverse active) or 0 (feed rate active)
	OverrideFeed	Feed rate override
	OverrideRapid	Rapid traverse override
	OverrideSpeed	Spindle override
	Program	Path name, program name
	ProgramCompleted	Total number of successfully completed programs
	ProgramCompleted CurPgm	Number of successfully completed programs of the type Program
	ProgramInterrupted Error	Total number of programs ended by errors
	ProgramInterrupted ErrorCurPgm	Total number of programs ended by errors, belonging to the type Program
	ProgramInterrupted User	Total number of programs ended by the operator
	ProgramInterrupted UserCurPgm	Total number of programs ended by the operator, belonging to the type Program
	ProgramStatus	Program status Values: DNC_PRG_STS_IDLE, DNC_PRG_STS_RUN- NING, DNC_PRG_STS_STOPPED, DNC_PRG_STS_INTERRUPTED, DNC_PRG_STS_FINISHED, DNC_PRG_STS_ERROR, DNC_PRG_STS_NOT_SELECTED
	ProgramEvent	Events in the program status Values: DNC_PRG_EVT_STARTED, DNC_PRG_EVT_S- TOPPED, DNC_PRG_EVT_FINISHED, DNC_PRG_EVT_CANCELED, DNC_PRG_EVT_IN- TERRUPTED, DNC_PRG_EVT_COMPLETED, DNC_PRG_EVT_ERROR, DNC_PRG_EVT_ER- ROR_CLEARED, DNC_PRG_EVT_SELECTED, DNC_PRG_EVT_SELECT_CLEARED
	ProgramStatusPrevious	Value as with the parameter Program_Status
		List of subprograms, separated by commas

## Table structure and parameters for MACHINE_DATA_V2

10

#### Table structure for MACHINE_ID_MAPPING_V2

Column	Value	
OLD_ID	Machine ID for StateMonitor versions < 1.3	
NEW_ID	Machine ID for StateMonitor versions ≥ 1.3	

#### Table structure for MACHINE_MESSAGE_V2

Column	Value
ID	ID
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table
MESSAGE_TYPE	Type of message Value: prg_completed, prg_canceled_by_user, prg_can- celed_by_error, fn38
MESSAGE	Free text of the message
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp

#### Table structure for MACHINE_STATE_HISTORY_V2

Column	Value
ID	ID
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table
STATE	Status of the machine Values: productive, productive_min, idle, inoperable, standby, down, undef
COMMENT	Comment on the separation of the status through JobTerminal (status transition in the JobTerminal)
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp

#### Table structure for MAINTENANCE_EXECUTION_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
MAINTENANCE_STATUS	Maintenance status Values: pending, Accepted, done	
DUE_DATE	Due date of active maintenance events Values: UNDUE, DUE, OVERDUE	
COMMENT	Comment	
TRIGGERED_BY	Trigger for triggering the maintenance event Value: TIME, PRODUCTIVE HOURS, ONLINEHOURS, MACHINEALARM	
CURRENT_ONLINE_HOURS	Current online machine hours	
CURRENT_PRODUCTIVE_HOURS	Current productive machine hours	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp	
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table	
MAINTENANCE_ID	Reference to ID column in MAINTENANCE_V2 table	
USER_ID	User who performed the maintenance status change	
MACHINE_ALARM_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_ALARM_V2 table	

#### Table structure for MAINTENANCE_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
NAME	Name of the maintenance event	
INTERVAL_TIME	Time after which (in ms) due	
OVERDUE_TIME	Overdue after INTERVAL_TIME in ms	
START_DATE_TIME	Starting time in ms	
INTERVAL_PRODUCTIVE_HOURS	Productive machine hours (in ms) after which due	
OVERDUE_PRODUCTIVE_HOURS	Overdue after INTERVAL_PRODUCTIVE_HOURS in ms	
START_PRODUCTIVE_HOURS	Starting time (in ms) of the productive machine hours	
INTERVAL_ONLINE_HOURS	Online machine hours (in ms) after which due	
OVERDUE_ONLINE_HOURS	Overdue after INTERVAL_ONLINE_HOURS in ms	
START_ONLINE_HOURS	Starting time (in ms) of the online machine hours	
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp	

#### Table structure for MAPPING_MAINTENANCE_PROCESS_STEP_V2

Column	Value	
MAINTENANCE_ID	Reference to ID column in MAINTENANCE_V2 table	
PROCESS_STEP_ID	Reference to ID column in PROCESS_STEP_V2 table	
SET	Timestamp for assignment of process_step_id to maintenance_id	
DELETED	Deleted maintenance steps	

#### Table structure for PROCESS_STEP_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
NAME	Name of the maintenance step	
DURATION	Duration in ms	
COMMENT	Comment	
EXECUTED_BY_OPERATOR	Execution by machine operator (0 or 1)	
EXECUTED_BY_EXTERNAL	Execution by external service provider (0 or 1)	
EXECUTED_BY_MAINTENANCE	Execution by maintenance technician (0 or 1)	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp	

#### Table structure for PROGRAM_HISTORY_V2

Column	Value
ID	ID
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table
PARENT_ID	ID of the parent program
PROGRAM	Program name
PROGRAM_START	Program start
PROGRAM_END	End of program
PROGRAM_STATE	State in which the program was ended Values: RUNNING, COMPLETED, ERROR, INTERRUPTED, STOPPED, INVALID

#### Table structure for SIGNAL_CONFIGURATION_V2

Column	Value
ID	ID
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table
NAME	Signal name
ACTIVE	Status (0 or 1)
POLLINGINTERVAL	Interval for polling Values: second_1, second_5, second_15, second_30, MINUTE_1, MINUTE_5, MINUTE_15, MINUTE_30, HOUR_1
PRETEXT	Text before the value
POSTTEXT	Text after the value
FACTOR	Conversion factor for signal value
DECIMALS	Decimal places used
SIGNAL_GROUP	Signal group
THRESHOLD	Threshold value
DATATYPE	Data type

#### Table structure for SIGNAL_DATA_V2

Column	Value	
ID	ID	
SIGNAL_CONFIGURATION_ID	Reference to ID column in SIGNAL_CONFIGURATION_V2 table	
MACHINE_ID	Reference to ID column in MACHINE_V2 table	
NAME	Signal name	
TIMESTAMP	Timestamp	
STRINGVALUE	Recorded value	
BOOLEANVALUE	Recorded value	
NUMBERVALUE	Recorded value	

# 10.11 Advanced submenu

In the **Advanced** submenu, you can perform advance settings for StateMonitor.



This function is only accessible to users with the Administrator role.

#### Changing the system language

٥

i

- Switch to the Settings menu
   Select the Advanced submenu
- In the System language section, select the desired language from the list
- Click the Save the change button

#### Notes:

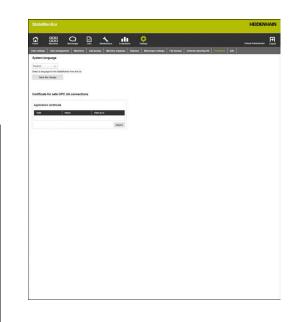
- The software does not need to be restarted when the system language is changed in StateMonitor
- In the User settings submenu, every user can set the language individually without affecting the global system language setting
- The language setting in the User settings submenu overrides the global system language setting
- For newly created users, the user language setting is the same as the system language setting until he or she selects a different language

#### Managing certificates (only for OPC UA)

If you use an authentication for OPC UA, then you must also select an application certificate.

Further information: "Connection settings", Page 235

In order to use the application certificate, you must first download the public key using the **Download Public Key** button and then import it along with your private key via the **Import** button.



# 10.12 Info submenu

The **Info** submenu contains the **License information** and legal notes related to the software.

StateMonitor displays the following information:

- StateMonitor version
- HEIDENHAIN DNC version
- StateMonitor serial number
- StateMonitor license
- Enabled software options
- Date of last maintenance (with activated software option 6)
- Release Notes

Ø

- License conditions
- Table with Open Source license notes
   Further information: "Functions in tables and charts", Page 46

To access the **Info** submenu, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Settings menu
  - Select the Info submenu

License information				
Hendor, No Honson HECKNVIK, Dice James H. 1.8.2 Scholarishi Kiving Desalery and J. J. Instance and Human Callerin L. Mintersocial Head Scholaris J. 2016 Finanzies Michael Karelona (James J. 2016) Finanzies Michael Karelona (James J. 2016) Spans State Finanzia Michael Karelona (James Michael Michael Karelona (James Michael) Michael Karelona (James Michael Michael Karelona (James		ne Staatstanty sofware		
The Databasis series concerning in which	symptic Any unsubscipal copyri tends the use of such cofficients	ing, use or definituation of Passe co	emponents or parts thereof is prohibited and may result in (sell legal action and strend proce relations)	uden. B pel Zentren for Never Technologier Creater Find
	Likence file		Pashd	
Lixense type		MT	54483	
Example type The SAT License (MIT)		047	Cyan.DK	
		041		

# 

Software options and licenses

# **11.1** Software options and licenses

The StateMonitor functionality can be extended using additional software options.

You can purchase licenses for software options from your HEIDENHAIN sales representative. You will then obtain a license key that activates the software option on the dongle.

The following software options are available:

Option	Extended functionality	ID
1	Five additional machines	1220884-01
2	Modbus Interface	1268670-01
3	OPC UA Interface	1268673-01
4	JobTerminal	1268674-01
5	MTConnect Interface	1268675-01
6	MaintenanceManager	1308520-01
7	Signals	1308521-01

# 11.2 Requesting a license

•

You can obtain licenses for software options from HEIDENHAIN after providing your StateMonitor serial number. The StateMonitor serial number is located in the **Info** submenu and on the StateMonitor dongle.

To access the **Info** submenu, proceed as follows:

- Switch to the Settings menu
- Select the Info submenu
- > An overview appears
- The program version and serial number are displayed
- Contact a HEIDENHAIN service agency and submit the displayed serial number in order to request a license for the product



# 11.3 Enabling the license

In order to use the license, it must be enabled on your dongle. The procedure depends on your configuration:

Online: The server or PC where the StateMonitor application is installed has Internet access:

You can directly enable your dongle-protected license.

**Further information:** "Enabling the license (online)", Page 190

Offline: The server or PC where the StateMonitor application is installed has no Internet access:

You first need to generate a request file and copy it to a PC with Internet access. Using this request file, you can then generate an update file to enable your license. The update file generated for this license must then be transferred to the server or PC where the StateMonitor application is installed so that you can enable your license there.

**Further information:** "Enabling the license (Offline)", Page 191

#### Enabling the license (online)

To enable the license on your dongle (online procedure), proceed as follows:

 Open the following URL on the server or PC where StateMonitor is installed: www.lc.codemeter.com/54077-02/depot

or

- Click the License update button
- > The StateMonitor license portal is displayed.
- Copy the license key (WIBU ticket) from the e-mail to the WIBU Ticket field
- Click the Next button
- > The License overview page opens.
- Click the Enable license button
- > The Available licenses page opens.
- Click the Activate Selected Licenses Now button and follow the instructions on the page
- The license requested via the WIBU ticket is enabled on your dongle.

#### **Enabling the license (Offline)**

To generate a license request file, proceed as follows:

- Open CodeMeter Control Center on the server or PC where StateMonitor is installed
- Click the License update button
- > The CmFAS wizard opens.
- Click the Generate license request option and then Next
- Click the Extend existing license option and then Next
- Click the DR. JOHANNES HEIDENHAIN GmbH option and then Next
- Enter the desired file name and its path and then click Apply
- > The license request file is created at the specified location.
- Transfer the license request file to a PC with Internet access (e.g. using a USB stick)

To generate a license update file, proceed as follows:

- Open the following URL: www.lc.codemeter.com/54077-02/depot
- > The StateMonitor license portal is displayed.
- Copy the license key (WIBU ticket) from the e-mail to the WIBU Ticket field
- Click the Next button
- > The License overview page opens.
- Click the Enable license button
- Click the Offline license transfer button and follow the instructions on the page
- > Your license update file is created.
- Transfer the license update file to the server or PC where StateMonitor is installed (e.g. using a USB stick)

To activate the license update file, proceed as follows:

- Open CodeMeter Control Center on the server or PC where StateMonitor is installed
- Click the License update button
- > The CmFAS wizard opens.
- Click the Import license update option and then Next
- Specify the file name including its path and then click **Apply**
- > The license update file is imported.
- The license requested via the WIBU ticket is enabled on your dongle.



Network integration

# 12.1 Precautions during enabling and network integration

## NOTICE

#### Risk of improper operation in the SIK menu

Machin malfunctions all the way up to machine standstill are possible

- Before calling the SIK menu, ensure that the machine is not currently in use
- You may need to restart the machine's control after enabling an option

# 12.2 SIK menu

The SIK ( $\mathbf{S}$ ystem Identification  $\mathbf{K}$ ey) contains the NC software license for enabling control loops and software options.

The SIK number provides the control with a unique identification.

Before you proceed, open the SIK menu of your control to check whether option 18 is enabled.

#### Procedure on iTNC 530:

	⇒	
٢		ר

 Select the Programming and Editing operating mode



ENT

- Press the MOD key
- Enter the code number SIK
- Press the ENT key
  - > The TNC displays the SIK menu on the screen.

If there is a check mark next to option 18, the HEIDENHAIN DNC interface is enabled on your control.

If there is no check mark next to option 18, you have to enable option 18.

Further information: "Enabling Option 18", Page 197

In order to enable an option, you will need the SIK number of your control. The SIK number is located in the SIK menu under SIK information in the **SIK Information, Serial No.** field **(SN)**.

#### Procedure on TNC 640, TNC 620, TNC 320 and TNC 128:

i

Select the **Programming** operating mode

MOD

ENT

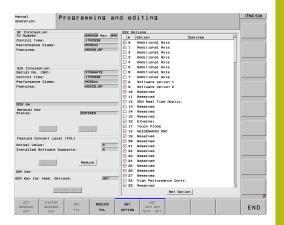
- Press the MOD key
- Enter the code number SIK
- ▶ Press the ENT key
- > The TNC displays the SIK menu on the screen.

If there is a check mark next to option 18, the HEIDENHAIN DNC interface is enabled on your control.

If there is no check mark next to option 18, you have to enable option 18.

Further information: "Enabling Option 18", Page 197

To enable an option, you need the SIK number of your control. You can find the SIK number in the **Serial No. (SN)** field under "SIK Information" in the SIK menu.



SIK content and opt	ion state				
NC Information-		SIK 0	ptions		
ID Number:	340590 Rev: 09 De		Option	Expires	
Control Type:	TNC640	<b></b> 0 <b></b>	Additional Axis 1		
Performance Class:	NCEEXX	区 1	Additional Axis 2		
Features:	SP	IX 2	Additional Axis 3		
SIK Information-		<b>X</b> 3	Additional Axis 4		
Serial No. (SN):	43619596 TNC640	区 4	Additional Axis 5		
Control Type: Performance Class:		IX 5	Additional Axis 6		
Features:	HEROS, SP	EX 6	Additional Axis 7		
SIK OK	nunva, ar	IX 7	Additional Axis 8		
-General Key-		IX 8	Adv. Function Set 1		
State:	NONE	IX 9	Adv. Function Set 2		_
-Feature Content Le	vel (ECL)	IX 17	Touch Probe Functions		
Actual Value:	0	IX 18	HEIDENHAIN DNC		
Installed Software	Supports:1		Adv. Progr. Features		
OEN Key			Adv. Graphic Features		
OEM Key for temp.	Options: Not set		Nov. Graphic reactives		
					a la l
					00

#### Procedure on CNC PILOT 640 and MANUALplus 620:



Select the **Organization** operating mode



- Press the Key soft key
- Enter the code number **SIK**
- ► Confirm with **OK**
- The control switches to the Machine par. programming submode and displays the SIK menu.

If there is a check mark next to option 18, the HEIDENHAIN DNC interface is enabled on your control.

If there is no check mark next to option 18, you have to enable option 18.

#### Further information: "Enabling Option 18", Page 197



To enable an option, you need the SIK number of your control. You can find the SIK number in the **Serial No. (SN)** field under "SIK Information" in the SIK menu.

SIK content and opti	on state	_			r i
NC Information		SIK C	ptions		A A
ID Number:	688947 Rev: 84	"	Option	Expires	VAM
Control Type:	CP6xx	xθ	Additional Axis 1		2
Performance Class:	MC64XXD	X 1	Additional Axis 2		-017
Features:	SP,Export	× 2	Additional Axis 3		
SIK Information		- 1 3	Additional Axis 4		
Serial No. (SN):	35687269	4	Additional Axis 5		- /-
Control Type:	СРбхх	- 5	Additional Axis 6		<b>1 - / -</b>
Performance Class:	MC64XXD				
Features:	HEROS, SP, Export	6	Additional Axis 7		0
SIK ok					⊕x1
General Key		<b>X</b> 8	Teach-in		
State:	NONE	<b>X</b> 9	smart.Turn		OW
Feature Content Lev		IX 18	Tools and Technology		H X
Actual Value:	4	IX 11	Thread Recutting		
Installed Software	Supports: 4	IX 17	Touch Probe Function	s	
OEM Key		- IX 18	HEIDENHAIN DNC		
OEM Key for temp. 0	ptions: Not set	l			
					07:46:05

# 12.3 Enabling Option 18

Option 18 is available on HEIDENHAIN controls as of the following software versions:

Control	As of software version
iTNC 530	34049x-01
iTNC 530 HSCI	60642x-01
TNC 640 HSCI	34059x-01
TNC 620 HSCI	34056x-01 / 73498x-01
TNC 320	34055x-01 / 771851-01
TNC 128	771841-01
CNC PILOT 640	68894x-01
MANUALplus 620	54843x-01

Option 18 enables the HEIDENHAIN DNC interface.

DNC stands for **D**istributed **N**umerical **C**ontrol. It is used for integrating computer-controlled machine tools (CNC machines) into a computer network.

#### Activation for a 90-day trial period

To activate option 18 for a 90-day trial period, proceed as follows:

- Write down the SIK number of the control Further information: "SIK menu", Page 195
- Contacting HEIDENHAIN Service:
  - By e-mail at this address: **service.nc-pgm@heidenhain.de**
  - Or by phone under the number: +49 8669 31-3103
- Indicate your SIK number. You will then receive the required code number for activating the desired option for a 90-day trial period.

#### A

- Notes:
- Individual options can be activated free of charge one time for a trial period of 90 days. After this trial period, activation is subject to a charge
- A free-of-charge activation of Option 18 on a trial basis is possible for the iTNC 530 beginning with software version 34049x-04.

#### Paid activation (unlimited)

To purchase option 18 and activate it for unlimited use, proceed as follows:

- Contacting HEIDENHAIN:
  - Per e-mail to: info@heidenhain.de
  - Or via the contact form on the homepage: www.heidenhain.de
  - Or via the HEIDENHAIN Klartext Portal: www.klartext-portal.de
- Provide the following mandatory information:
  - The SIK number of your control
  - Your contact details
  - Your phone number in case we need to contact you
- > The department responsible will promptly get in touch with you.
- > You will receive a five-digit activation code.

#### Procedure

SET OPTION

If you have received the activation code, then proceed as follows:

- Open the SIK menu
   Further information: "SIK menu", Page 195
- Place the cursor on Option 18
  - Press the SET OPTION soft key
    - > A pop-up window for entering the activation code then appears.
    - Enter the activation code
    - Confirm with OK.
    - Option 18 is then activated on the control and in the SIK menu.
    - Restart the control if required

# 12.4 Network integration

StateMonitor can only be used if the machine controls have been integrated into the network.

Standard HEIDENHAIN controls are equipped with an Ethernet card. This enables you to connect the controls to your network as clients.



The configuration for integration into the network should be performed by a specialists.



For the iTNC 530 with software versions **prior to** 34049x-05:

If you change the IP address of the TNC, the control will restart automatically.

#### Network integration using fixed IP addresses

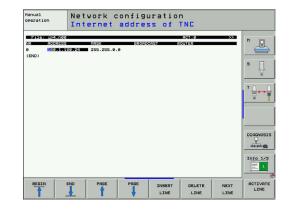
If the IP addresses are not obtained dynamically from a DHCP server, fixed IP addresses within a subnet must be entered into the interface configuration of the controls.

#### iTNC 530 beginning with software version 34049x-04 (HEROS 4)

• Enter the following information into the columns:

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

<b>⇒</b>	•	Select the <b>Programming and Editing</b> mode of operation
MOD		Press the <b>MOD</b> key
		Enter the code number NET123
ENT	•	Press the <b>ENT</b> key
DEFINE		Press the <b>DEFINE NET</b> soft key
NET	>	The control displays the main network configuration screen



Setting	Meaning	Input
ADDRESS	Enter the IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods e.g. 160.1.180.20
MASK	The SUBNET MASK serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network.	Four numerical values separated by periods. Ask your network specialist for the values
		e.g. 255.255.0.0
BROADCAST	The broadcast address of the control is required only if it differs from the default setting. The default setting is formed from the network ID and the host ID, where all bits are set to 1.	e.g. 160.1.255.255
ROUTER	Internet address of your default router. Enter the Internet address only if your network consists of multiple subnets.	Four numerical values separated by periods. Ask your network specialist for the values
		e.g. 160.1.0.2
HOST	Name under which the TNC identifies itself in the network	e.g. iTNC530_machine1
DOMAIN	Domain name of your company network	If necessary, ask your network specialist
NAMESERVER	Network address of the domain server	If necessary, ask your network specialist

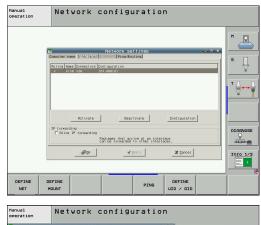
#### iTNC 530 beginning with software version 34049x-05 (HEROS 4)

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

$\Rightarrow$		Select the <b>Programming and Editing</b> mode of operation
MOD		Press the <b>MOD</b> key Enter the code number <b>NET123</b>
ENT		Press the ENT key Press the DEFINE NET soft key
DEFINE NET		The control then displays the pop-up window for the network settings.
		Click the Configuration button
	>	The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
		Enter the information from the table below into

the pop-up window

▶ Press the **OK** button





Setting	Meaning	Input	
Status	Interface active	Check box must be selected	
Name:	Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)	
Plug connection:	Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)	
IP address	IP address of the control	Select the <b>Set the IP address manually</b> option	
Address:	Enter the IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 160.1.180.20	
Subnet mask	The <b>Subnet mask</b> serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network.	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 255.255.0.0	
	Enter the <b>Subnet mask</b>	If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value	



Further information: HEIDENHAIN Conversational Programming User's Manual for iTNC 530

## iTNC 530 beginning with software version 60642x-04 (HEROS 5) with HSCI

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

$\Rightarrow$	•	Select the <b>Programming and Editing</b> mode of operation
MOD		Press the <b>MOD</b> key
		Enter the code number <b>NET123</b>
ENT	►	Press the <b>ENT</b> key
DEFINE		Press the <b>DEFINE NET</b> soft key
NET	>	The control displays the pop-up window for the network settings.
		On the <b>Computer name</b> tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network
		Switch to the Interfaces tab
		Select the interface (eth0)
		Click the Configuration button
	>	The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
		On the <b>Settings</b> tab of the pop-up window, enter the information from the table below
		Press the <b>OK</b> button

Det location         Det location           Compared random bandlands         With Statuced           Procession         The second random bandlands           Procession         The second random bandands           Procession </th <th>H S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S</th>	H S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S S
Comparts and matching lambda (lamb and lambda (lambda	5100 OFF
Use interface: etc	5100 OFF
Use interface: etc	S100 OFF F100
Mic_VINCL/55 The complete same same same same same same same sam	5100 () () () () () () () () () () () () ()
Hear The Doc hours like Name of hour Dic Consection of the Consection of the Cons	F100
Over Name      Name of hour to	F100
Over Name      Name of hour to	F100
Const Const	F188
	OFF
d ² ge d ² briv School B ^{1,Changy} S ¹⁰⁰ House	
Manual Network configuration	
	-
Computer name Interfaces Interface I	M 6
Active Name Connectors Configuration	5
X e80 X26 DHCPLAN	
	T 📋
	A
Activate Deactivate Configuration	5100
IP knowsrding	OFF
Packaps that anne at an interface can be forwarded to other interfaces.	F188
d stativ Scarcel	OFF
والمعادية المراجعة المحافظة محافظة المحافظة ا	9

Activate/ Ocactivate

Delete

Setting	Meaning	Input
Status	Interface active	Check box must be selected
Name:	Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)
Plug connection:	Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address	IP address of the control	Select the <b>Set the IP address manually</b> option
Address:	Enter the IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 160.1.180.20
Subnet mask	The <b>Subnet mask</b> serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network. Enter the <b>Subnet mask</b>	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 255.255.0.0 If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value

el Cancel

The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

# NOTICE

#### **Caution: Malfunction!**

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



**Further information:** HEIDENHAIN Conversational Programming User's Manual for iTNC 530

# TNC 620 software version 34056x (HEROS 4) and TNC 320 software version 34055x (HEROS 4)

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

Connect the control to the local company network via a network ► cable

$\Rightarrow$	<ul> <li>Select the <b>Programming</b> operating mode</li> </ul>
MOD	Press the MOD key
	Enter the code number NET123
ок	Press the <b>OK</b> soft key
PGM MGT	Press the Program Management key
NET	Press the <b>Network</b> soft key
CONFIGURE	Press the Configure Network soft key
CONFIGURE NETWORK	<ul> <li>Press the <b>Configure Network</b> soft key</li> <li>The control then displays the pop-up window for the network settings.</li> </ul>
	> The control then displays the pop-up window for
	<ul> <li>The control then displays the pop-up window for the network settings.</li> <li>In the Hostname field, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The control then displays the pop-up window for the network settings.</li> <li>In the Hostname field, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network</li> </ul>
NETWORK	<ul> <li>The control then displays the pop-up window for the network settings.</li> <li>In the Hostname field, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network</li> <li>Select NO for DHCP support</li> </ul>

the pop-up window Press the OK button

B- PLC: N		Mount	Auto	Mount poin	Mount dev	ice		
TNC:N Config Config Config Conceptog Conceptog Conceptog table Conceptide	1			PC:	Nde01pc8	420\trans	fer	
	Network se	ttings						
	Hostname			Si	<b>1</b>			
	DHCP supp			NO		-		
	IP address				0 1 247 20	88		
	Subnet ma: Broadcast	5k		25	5 255 0 0	_		
	Router					-		l
	ок				CANCEL			
		-						

Setting	Meaning	Input
IP address	IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 160.1.180.20
Subnet mask	The <b>Subnet mask</b> serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network. Enter the <b>Subnet mask</b>	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 255.255.0.0 If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value
Broadcast	The broadcast address of the control is required only if it differs from the default setting. The default setting is formed from the network ID and the host ID, where all bits are set to 1.	e.g. 160.1.255.255
Router	Internet address of your default router. Enter the Internet address only if your network consists of multiple subnets.	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 160.1.0.2 If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value
Changes the contr	to the network settings will cause a restart of ol.	

# TNC 640 / TNC 620 / TNC 320 / TNC 128 (HEROS 5)

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

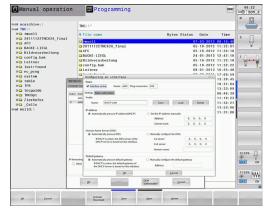
 Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

$\Rightarrow$	<ul> <li>Select the <b>Programming</b> operating mode</li> </ul>
MOD	Press the MOD key
	Enter the code number NET123
ок	<ul> <li>Press the <b>OK</b> soft key</li> </ul>
PGM MGT	Press the Program Management key
NET	<ul> <li>Press the NET soft key</li> </ul>
CONFIGURE	Press the CONFIGURE NETWORK soft key
NETWORK	<ul> <li>The control displays the pop-up window for the network settings.</li> </ul>
	On the Computer name tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network
	Switch to the Interfaces tab
	<ul> <li>Select the interface (eth0)</li> </ul>
	Click the Configuration button
	> The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
	Enter the information from the table below into

- Enter the information from the table below into the pop-up window
- Press the OK button

************************************	J RS232:	N CONTRACTOR OF CONTRACTOR OFONTO OFO	TNC: \nc prog*			
Bit Conf 16						
Bit International         211 17 2014 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17 24 17			<b> </b>	Bytes Status	Date	Timo
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			<b>a</b>		8-11-2014	12:43:24
Bit 111 fam			🖴 5 - Axes		6-10-2013	14:34:13
9         91/12         21/12/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/2014         10/			G MillTurn		2-02-2014	09:28:57
Be system     Be system			Smdi.h	210 :	5-11-2014	16:38:41
se table 1 4.5 243 11.4 4.2 444 07.4 10.4 10.4 10.4 10.4 10.4 10.4 10.4 10			a1.h	175	2-02-2014	09:28:51
a) Totage (main and the second sec						
Ben Decomposition     Ben Decomposition						
Brock Michael Mic	and then	lide	a4.h	827	2-02-2014	09:28:52
WHILE       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing         Bench Schlassing       Bench Schlassing       Bench	TNCO	Netzwerkeinstellungen				0.8.0
KRUD:     Enders bolination     Enders bolination     Enders bolination     Enders bolination     Enders bolination     Enders bolination     Enders     Enders		Computernamen Schnittstellen	Internet Ping/Routing NFS UID/GID DHCP-Server Sa	ndbax		
Read Body     Marcel Read Read Read Read Read Read Read Read		Rechnemame	Der Becharnsma diert nur Ma	tifficeum in Netr		
DC - Construction - Construction - Belleville		Host-Datei benutzen	Wern kein Name eingegeben is den Namen von der oben gewä			
				OEM	6bbrechen	

RS232:\ PLC:\	TNC:	nc_prog\.					
TNC:\	* E13	e name			Bytes Statu	Date	Time
Config					byttes statu		
lost+found	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					28-11-2014	
a nc_prog		Turn				12-02-2014	
😋 runtime		li.h			210	25-11-2014	
Service	a1.				175	12-02-2014	
system	a1.				243	12-02-2014	
table	83.				840	12-02-2014	
temp	a4.				827	12-02-2014	
<ul> <li>Incguide</li> <li>INCOp Netzwerkeinst</li> </ul>	ellungen						
PDATE: Computernamen Se	chaltstelen internet P	ing/Routing NFS UID/GID	DHCP-Server San	doox			
MODU D. 1	ker Konfiguration Sans						
eth1 X114 X eth0 X26							
			DeskSuitere	n.,	Justigers	eren	
	DHOPLAN			de seismenn diefe	tiperiotana	een.	
X etto X26	DHOPLAN		an einer Schnittste Schnittstellen weite	de seismenn diefe	n 1	Bbrechen	



Setting	Meaning	Input
Status	Interface active	Check box must be selected
Name:	Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)
Plug connection:	Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address	IP address of the control	Select the <b>Set the IP address manually</b> option
Address:	Enter the IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 160.1.180.20
Subnet mask	The <b>Subnet mask</b> serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network. Enter the <b>Subnet mask</b>	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 255.255.0.0 If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value

The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

# NOTICE

#### **Caution: Malfunction!**

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



**Further information:** Conversational Programming User's Manual TNC 640 / TNC 620 / TNC 320 / TNC 128

# **CNC PILOT 640 beginning with software version** 688946-01 (HEROS 5)

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

Switch to the Organization operating mode



TRANSFER

- Press the Key soft key
- ► Enter the code number NET123
- Press the **OK** button ►
- Press the Transfer soft key
- Con-nections

Network Config.

- Press the Connections soft key
- Press the Network Config. soft key
- > The control displays the pop-up window for the network settings.
- On the Computer name tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network
- Switch to the Interfaces tab
- Select the interface (eth0)
- Click the Configuration button
- > The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
- Enter the information from the table below into the pop-up window
- Press the OK button

→ Machine	🚯 smart.Tur	in l	A Tool editor		8	ŀ
	nternet Ping/Routing NFS U	ID/GID DHCP serve	er   Sandbox   SMB rele	ease		
Primary interface	You can i	configure the domain.	name, server and def	ault		
	gateway If requires from this	only on ONE interfac d, the control also tak interface	name, server and def e. es the computer name	2		
[						
Use interface:	sh0 -					
Computer name DE01PC19527-1230521						
DE01PC19527-1230521	The compu	ter name serves as ic	lentification in the netw	vork.		
	from the ab	is entered, the control ove selected interfact	lentification in the netw tries to take the name t.	15		
Host file						
Name of host file:						
QK	Ar	aply.	OEM authorization		Gancel	
1	[ [	1	Exchange	llee	i i	OEM
QK Appl	y <u>C</u> ancel		Exchange Interface	Use Host file		authorizati
→ Machine	📀 smart.Tur	in 🔤	🎦 Tool editor			
Network settings	nternet Ping/Routing NFS U	_	_	_	_	
Active Name Connectors	Configuration Sandt	жах				
	DHCP-LAN					
X eth1 X116	DHCP-VBoxHostOnly					
X eth1 X116	DHCP-VBaxHastOnly					
X ethi X116	DHCP-VBoxHostOnly					
X ethi Xil6	DHCP-VBoxHostOnly					
X ethi Xil6	DHCP-VBcoHostOnly					
X ethi Xil6	DHCP-VBoxHostOnly					
X ethi X116	Activate	Desctive	de	Config	guration	
P forwarding		Deactive	ae	Config	guration	
	Activate	Packages that arrive a	t an interface can	Config	guration	
P forwarding	Activate	Packages that arrive a le forwarded to other i	t an interface can nterfaces.	Config		
P forwarding	Activate	Packages that arrive a	t an interface can	Confi	guration	
P towarding Allow IP towarding	Activite	Packages that arrive a e forwarded to other i	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	OEM
P forwarding Allow IP forwarding	Activite	Packages that arrive a le forwarded to other i	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization	Config		OEM authorizati
P transding  P transding  QK  Appl	Activitie 5	Packages that arrive a e forwarded to other i	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	
P torwarding Allow IP torwarding QK QK Accel The Conf Agurain	Activitie 5	Packages that arrive a e forwarded to other i	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	
P forwarding ☐ Allow IP forwarding QK QK ▲ Appl → Plact iconf squara in Status	Activate	Packages that arrive a forwarded to other in the second se	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	
P forwarding Allow IP forwarding QK Allow IP forwarding QK Allow IP fact Conf Agure in Status Status Conf Agure in	Activate	Packages that arrive a forwarded to other in the second se	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	
P forwarding Allow IP forwarding QK Allow IP and QK Allow IP and Allow	Activate	Packages that arrive a forwarded to other in the second se	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	
Plowwedrog Allow IP forwardrog QK Allow IP forwardrog Status Stat	Activate	Packages that arrive a forwarded to other in the second se	t an interface can nterfaces. OEM authorization		Cancel	
P forwarding  P forwarding  QK  QK  Across  Across  Status  Status  Status  Status  Status  Name:  P office Name:  P office	Activate  Activate  S  Carect  Carect  Carect  S  Carect  Carect S  Carect  S  Carect S  Carect  S	Activate	d an introface can metricace. DEM 	orfiguration	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
P forwarding  P forwarding  QK  QK  Across  Across  Status  Status  Status  Status  Status  Name:  P office Name:  P office	Activate Act	hetages that arrive e       hetages that arrive e       for       Activate       g connection:       128       y       O Setel       A	tan interface can interfaces. Deactivate Save the IP address menaaddens:	orfiguration	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off Delete	
P forwarding ☐ Allow IP forwarding	Activate	hetages that arrive e       hetages that arrive e       for       Activate       g connection:       128       y       O Setel       A	a av interface can neterface, <u>unifortration</u> Descrivete <u>Save</u> the IP address menual	orfiguration	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
P Innuading Altor /P Innuading QK Appl	Activate  Activate	Activate p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p	t an interface can transition of the second	orfiguration	Cancel     IP Ionwarding     On/Off      Delete      0. 0. 0	
P Innuading Altor /P Innuading QK Appl	Activate		an interface can network.co. DEM DEM DEMCINICATION Descrives C Save Save be IP address mesual address: used constraints: used constraints: used constraints: torver:	oringuration	<u>Cancel</u> IP forwarding On/Off Delete 0. 0. 0 0. 0. 0	
P Innuading Altor /P Innuading QK Appl	Activate  Activate	Actuate Actuate  Control of the  Control of t	t an interface can transition of the second	orfiguration	Cancel     IP Ionwarding     On/Off      Delete      0. 0. 0	
P Norwarding  Allow IP proventing  QK Annu IP	Activate  Activate	Activate     Connection     Con	an interface can transition of the subortation Descrives C C Save be IP Advances musual denses: utanet music utanet music utanet music	Load by 0. 0. 0. 5. 0.	<u>Cancel</u> IP forwarding On/Off Delete 0. 0. 0 0. 0. 0	OEM mathematical

Setting	Meaning	Input
Status	Interface active	Check box must be ticked
Name:	Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)
Plug connection:	Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address	IP address of the control	Select the <b>Set the IP address manually</b> option
Address:	Enter the IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 160.1.180.20
Subnet mask	The <b>Subnet mask</b> serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network. Enter the <b>Subnet mask</b>	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 255.255.0.0 If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value

QK

Activate/ Deactivate

Cancel

QK

Cancel

<u>Open</u>

Save

The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

# NOTICE

#### **Caution: Malfunction!**

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



**Further information:** User's Manual CNC PILOT 640 starting with software version 68894x-04

## MANUALplus 620 starting with software versions 548328-05 and 54843x-01 (HEROS 5)

To integrate the control into the company network via a fixed IP address, proceed as follows:

Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

	<ul> <li>Switch to the <b>Organization</b> operating mode</li> </ul>
0	<ul> <li>Press the Key soft key</li> <li>Enter the code number <b>NET123</b></li> <li>Press the <b>OK</b> button</li> </ul>
TRANSFER	<ul> <li>Press the Transfer soft key</li> </ul>
Con- nections	<ul> <li>Press the Connections soft key</li> </ul>
Network	Press the Network soft key
¥	The control displays the <b>Network connection</b> pop-up window.
Config.	Press the Config. soft key
coning.	The control displays the Network configuration pop-up window.
	<ul> <li>Enter the information from the table below into the pop-up window</li> </ul>
Sava	Press the Save soft key

→ Machine		🚯 smart.Tu	urn	Tool ed	itor	Transfer	:
Basic data							
		connection	_		_		-
		IP address of	r host name	HOSTNAME			l n
	Host: S Protoco	Share name		SHARED			
	User na			USERNAME			
	Domain			WORKGROUP			
	Passwor	:d		<u> </u>			
	Selecti	.on er-Ordner					Kanal 1
							Kanal I
							2000
							service
				-			3
	Network			Z:			
USB connectio	n active: F	:\TURN					
Transfer-		Antin	Test	Info	Courses	0	Death
Ordner anlegen		Config.	(ping)	Into	Separate	Connect	Back
Machina		S caart Ti	uro	Tool of	itor	Transfer	2
		smart.Tu	urn	🏳 Tool ed	itor	Transfer	ć
					itor	Transfer	é
			Network conf	iguration		_	
	)		Network conf Control nam	iguration	MANUALplus62	_	
			Network conf	iguration		_	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP	iguration	MANUALplus62		
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF - 192 168 255 255	19  000  000  255  000	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	
Hachine Basic data			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1
			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1
assic data			Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1
	n active: F		Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1
assic data	n active: F		Network conf Control nam DHCP IP address Subnet mask Broadcast	iguration	MANUALplus62 OFF = 192 168 255 255 255 255	1000 000 255 000 255 000	Kanal 1

12

Save

B

1	2
	4

Setting	Meaning	Input
Control name	Name under which the control is visible in the network	e.g. MANUALplus620
DHCP	OFF: The control has a fixed IP address in the network.	OFF
	ON: The control automatically obtains the following data from a DHCP server:	
	IP address	
	Subnet mask	
	Broadcast	
	Gateway	
IP address	IP address of the control	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 192.168.000.000
Subnet mask	The <b>Subnet mask</b> serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 255.255.255.0
	the network.	If necessary, ask your network specialist
	Enter the <b>Subnet mask</b>	for the proper value
Broadcast	The broadcast address of the control is	Four numerical values separated by
	required only if it differs from the default setting. The default setting is formed from the network ID and the host ID, where all bits are set to 1.	periods, e.g. 255.255.255.0
		If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value
Gateway	The IP address of the default gateway only needs to be entered if you are using more	Four numerical values separated by periods, e.g. 192.168.000.254
	than one network.	If necessary, ask your network specialist for the proper value
	nformation: User's Manual MANUALplus 620	
54843x-0	vith software versions 548328-05 and 1	

#### **Network integration via DHCP**

In large networks, clients are usually connected to the network via DHCP.

DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol.

DHCP is a communication protocol or Internet protocol used by servers to assign the network configuration to clients. The clients automatically obtain IP addresses and other parameters from a DHCP server.

A client is a terminal device that requests services from a server via a network.

A network with more clients than available IP addresses can, by using the DHCP connection, manage with fewer IP addresses, since not all clients are logged-on at the same time. This prevents IP addresses from being blocked by clients that are not logged on. The available IP addresses are assigned dynamically to the clients logged on to the network.

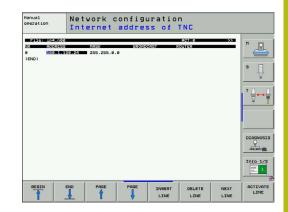


With the iTNC 530 controls, the connection via DHCP is an FCL-2 function.

#### iTNC 530 starting with software version 34049x-04 (HEROS 4)

To integrate the control into the company network via DCHP, proceed as follows:

$\Rightarrow$		Select the <b>Programming and Edi</b> operation
MOD		Press the <b>MOD</b> key
		Enter the code number NET123
ENT		Press the <b>ENT</b> key
DEFINE		Press the <b>DEFINE NET</b> soft key
NET	>	The control displays the main net configuration screen



Setting	Meaning	Input
ADDRESS	The control obtains the IP address from a DHCP server.	DHCP
MASK	The control obtains the SUBNET MASK from a DHCP server.	(Leave blank)
BROADCAST	The control obtains the broadcast address from a DHCP server.	(Leave blank)
ROUTER	Internet address of your default router	Enter the Internet address only if your network consists of multiple subnets.
HOST	Name under which the TNC identifies itself in the network	Enter the computer name
DOMAIN	Domain name of your company network	DHCP
NAMESERVER	Dynamic assignment of the domain server address	(Leave blank)

Editing mode of

network

• Enter the following information into the columns:

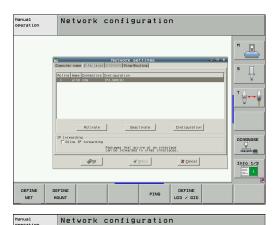
Further information: HEIDENHAIN Conversational Programming User's Manual for iTNC 530

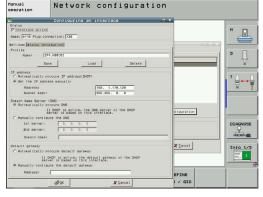
# iTNC 530 starting with software version 34049x-05 (HEROS 4)

To integrate the control into the company network via DCHP, proceed as follows:

<b>\</b>	Select the <b>Programming and Editing</b> mode of operation
	Press the <b>MOD</b> key Enter the code number <b>NET123</b> Press the <b>ENT</b> key
NET	Press the <b>DEFINE NET</b> soft key The control displays the pop-up window for the network settings. On the <b>Computer name</b> tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network
	Select the <b>Interfaces</b> tab and click the <b>Configuration</b> button

- > The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
- Enter the following information into the pop-up window:





Interface active Name of the interface	Check box must be selected
Name of the interface	
	(Leave unchanged)
Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address of the control	Select the Automatically procure IP address(DHCP) option
The control automatically obtains the IP address from a DHCP server.	
The control automatically obtains the subnet mask from a DHCP server.	
	IP address of the control The control automatically obtains the IP addr

**Further information:** HEIDENHAIN Conversational Programming User's Manual for iTNC 530

m

# iTNC 530 starting with software version 60642x-04 (HEROS 5) with HSCI

To integrate the control into the company network via DCHP, proceed as follows:

 Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

$\Rightarrow$	<ul> <li>Select the Programming and Editing mode of operation</li> </ul>
MOD	Press the MOD key
	Enter the code number NET123
ENT	Press the ENT key
DEFINE	Press the DEFINE NET soft key
NET	<ul> <li>The control displays the pop-up window for the network settings.</li> </ul>
	On the Computer name tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network
	Switch to the Interfaces tab
	<ul> <li>Select the interface (eth0)</li> </ul>
	Click the Configuration button
	<ul> <li>The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.</li> </ul>
	On the Settings tab of the pop-up window, enter the following information:

	NetHork settings     Origination interfaces internet ProgRearing NFSUD/GD
	Peinary interface You can configure the domain, name, server and default gateway only on ORE interface. If requires, the computer names from this interface.
	If required, the control also tasks the computer names from the instruction of the control also tasks the computer names from the control of
	Computer name
	MNC_HSCLPS The computer name series as identification in the names from name is extended, the control the so table the names from the above selected interface.
	Host lie Use host lie Name of host lie
	d hardy € Seried
¢₫gĸ	
€ ÖK	Al Arviv Scancel Scance Hate
Manual operation	Network configuration
-	
	Natuork settings  Computername Internet
	Active         Name         Connectors         Configuration           X         etito         xcc6         DHCP1LAN
	Configuration
	P forwarding     Packages that arrive at an interface can     be forwarded to other interfaces.
	Cancel
щак	الله المعالي ال المعالي المعالي
	OvOI
Manual operation	Network configuration
	Configuring an interface   Configuring an interface  Configuring an in
	Settings Status information
	Name: DHCP-LAN Save Load Delete
	Nume         DHCP-LAN         Same         Load         Drive           IP address              Ø. Automatically procure IP addressIDHCP7
	IP Judiress         O         Set the IP address manually           Ø Automatically procure IP address/DHCPh         O         Set the IP address manually           Molessi         0         0         0           Subbet mask:         0         0         0
	P Addiss.     O Americally procest P Address/PC(P)     O artis P Address minutly     Address     Subtransa:     So 0, 0, 0, 0      Dealls Americally procest P Address/PC(P)     O Americal Americal PAC     Deally Amer
	P Addiss.     O Americally procest P Address/PC(P)     O artis P Address minutly     Address     Subtransa:     So 0, 0, 0, 0      Dealls Americally procest P Address/PC(P)     O Americal Americal PAC     Deally Amer
	Addata     Addata Amanualy     Addata     Addata Amanualy     Addata
	Addata     Advata     Advat

Meaning	Input
Interface active	Check box must be selected
Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)
Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address of the control	Select the Automatically procure IP address(DHCP) option
The control automatically obtains the IP address from a DHCP server.	
	Interface active Name of the interface Designation of the connector: X26 IP address of the control

Setting	Meaning Input
Subnet mask:	The subnet mask serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network.
	The control automatically obtains the subnet mask.
Domain Name	Automatically procure DNS option:
Server (DNS)	The TNC automatically obtains the IP address of the domain name server.
	Manually configure the DNS option:
	Manually enter the IP address of the server and the domain name.
Default gateway	Automatically procure default gateway option:
	The TNC automatically obtains the IP address of the default gateway.
	Manually configure the default gateway option:
	Manually enter the IP address of the default gateway.

 Apply the changes with the OK button, or discard them with the Cancel button

The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

# NOTICE

#### **Caution: Malfunction!**

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

 Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



**Further information:** HEIDENHAIN Conversational Programming User's Manual for iTNC 530

#### TNC 640 / TNC 620 / TNC 320 / TNC 128

To integrate the control into the company network via DCHP, proceed as follows:

 Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

$\textcircled{\Rightarrow}$	Select the <b>Programming</b> operating mode
MOD	<ul> <li>Press the MOD key</li> <li>Enter code number NET123</li> </ul>
ок	<ul> <li>Press the <b>OK</b> soft key</li> </ul>
	Press the Program Management key
NET	<ul> <li>Press the NET soft key</li> </ul>
CONFIGURE	Press the Configure Network soft key
NETWORK	<ul> <li>The control displays the Network configuration pop-up window.</li> </ul>
	On the Computer name tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network

- Switch to the Interfaces tab
- Select the interface (eth0)
- Click the Configuration button
- The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
- Enter the following information in the pop-up window:

🔁 Manua	al operation			DN	12:45
1		a rigitating			
B→ RS232: B→ PLC:\	1	TNC: \nc_prog\'			
B- TNC: \		♦ File name	Bytes St	atus Date Time	
B-C conf:		<b>a</b>		28-11-2014 12:43:2	4
Ba lost		😋 S - Axes		16-10-2013 14:34:1	
B- runt:		G WillTurn		12-02-2014 09:28:5	
B-C Serv		Smdi.h al.h	210	25-11-2014 16:38:4 12-02-2014 09:28:5	
BC syste		a1.n a2.h	243	12-02-2014 09:28:5	
Da temp	e	a3.h	840	12-02-2014 09:28:5	
Ba thog	uide	a4.h	827	12-02-2014 09:28:5	2
ILON THEOR	Netzwerkeinstellungen			o 18	
WORLD:		Internet Ping/Routing NFS UID/GID DHCP-Server	Sandbax		
	Benutze Schnittstelle:	and LINER Schnetzstele konn Vin disear Schnitzstele bezei Rechnemamen.	paleren. ht die Steverung gyt auch den		
	Rechnemame				-
	MNC_640_1				
	Host Oatei	Der Rechnername dienet zur Wern kan kanne einspelete den Namen von der oben ge bediehen.	identifizierung im Netz. 11. st. versucht die Stevenung wählten Schnittstelle zu		
	Host Oatel Host Oatel benutzen Name der Host Oatel	Wenn kein Name eingegeber den Namen von der oben ge	denotifizarung im Netz. In venuend te Stoeening walabzen Schnittstelle zu		
	Host-Datei benutzen	Wenn kein Name eingegeber den Namen von der oben ge	Gentificancy in Notz. In Centrol (d) Selection walker schnistiele zu Benchligung Benchligung	febrechen -	
	Host Datei berwizen Name der Host Datei	Wire fam blann eine specier beather.	I BL versucht die Stoefnung wikken Schriftsofe zu		
œ	Host Datei berwizen Name der Host Datei	Winn han bland en despeter bearbe.	I BE, versucht die Stevenung wählten Schnittstelle zu	gbinechen	
œ	Name der Host Oatei		In the version of the Statemann Without Schertfluole zu	OF M	
	Hist Date Benstein	Argender,	In the version of the Statemann Without Schertfluole zu	CEM Berechtigung	12:46
	Name der Host Oatei		In the version of the Statemann Without Schertfluole zu	OF M	
🕑 Manua	Hist Dute Bendten Kanne der Hist Dute Krigsteden Argeneten Ableee Ableee Ableee Ableee Ableee	And Programming	In the version of the Statemann Without Schertfluole zu	CEM Berechtigung	
Manus RS232: B PLC: 1	Hist Dute Bendten Kanne der Hist Dute Krigsteden Argeneten Ableee Ableee Ableee Ableee Ableee	Book and a first and a fi	Contraction of the second seco	OEN Berecktgung	
Manua RS232: PLC: \ TNC: \	Not Over lensten     Name der Hott Outer      Argenten     Albere      al operation	Bernard Anno 1999	In the version of the Statemann Without Schertfluole zu	ota benchtgung atus Date Tige	
Manus RS232: B PLC: 1	Hell Over benchen Kame der Hell Odel Den Angenden Aller Aller 19		Contraction of the second seco	ORM Beeckforgung atus Date Time 28-11-2014 12:43:2	
Manus RS232: POPLC:\ P	HIG Over Hum Core Name der Hill Over Name der Hill Over  Kagender  Ausgender	Browner     B	Contraction of the second seco	SCH Bereckspung atus Date Time 28-11-2014 12:412 16-10-2013 14:341	
Manus Manus PLC:\ Particitation Plc:\ Particitation Partic	Hit Debe bindbe Anne der Hit Debe. De degenden Abere A		ge generation of the second se	Oth Benchtgang atus Date Time 28-11-2014 12:43:2 16-10-2019 14:34:1	
Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua	Interded Interded	Browner     B	Contraction of the second seco	SCH Bereckspung atus Date Time 28-11-2014 12:412 16-10-2013 14:341	S SOM_
Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus Manus	Heldbels henden Anne for Heldbels Den Anne for Heldbels De Anne for Heldbels Anne fo	Bern in the second	And an and a second sec	SCH Beeckspung atus Date Time 28-11-2014 [2:412] 16-10-2014 [2:412] 25-11-2014 [1:3:84]	Son_
Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua Manua	Heldbels henden Anne for Heldbels Den Anne for Heldbels De Anne for Heldbels Anne fo	The second seco	Gen month and have been been been been been been been be	Oth Benchtgang atus Dato Time 29-11-2014 12:43:2 16-10-2013 14:3411 12-02-2013 14:3411 12-02-2014 10:21:5	стор Бон.

s⇔ WORLD:\	Aktiv Name Stecke eth1 X116 X eth0 X26	r Konfiguration I DHCP-LAN	landbox					
	P-forwarding	Although		DeskIlvieren	Autoprie	987		
	<ul> <li>IMenwarding e</li> </ul>	rlauben	Pakate, die an eine an andere Schnitts	Schnittstelle ankommen, dürf tellen weitergegeben werden.	len			
	8	gĸ	Argerder.	OEM Berechtigung		&bbreches		
QK	Mando	Altrechen	Aktivieren Deaktivier	en	IP forwarding Ein/Aus	DEM Berechtigung		
Manua ncarchi	al operat		Programmin	9			DNC	08:22
e-C #muel			ile name		Bytes Status	Date	Timo	S 🗆
BC AFC	rerarbeitung ig.bak ier found cog m b idde ot	Network Computer ner Achier Nam ehi	MCKE-LIEGL Slidverarbeitung config.bak oltnor Configuring an interface Satus Wiendriczache Name emb Setus Setus Dassinbendon Pode	Peg correction [226 ]		08-01-201: BD	2 11:32:01 2 11:32:18 3 12:47:10 2 11:32:22 3 16:25:48 1 17:09:59 13:39:45 10:31:04 13:33:09 08:46:39 11:19:23	· ₽ 
Ba _Call	Ls .	X et0	Name: DHCP-LAN	Save	Lasd	Delete	11:32:21 13:53:06	-

		Marcine         Marcine <t< th=""></t<>
Setting	Meaning	Input
Status	Interface active	Check box must be selected
Name:	Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)
Plug connection:	Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address IP address of the control Select the Automatically pr address(DHCP) option		Select the Automatically procure IP address(DHCP) option
Address:	The control automatically obtains the IP	address from a DHCP server.

Setting	Meaning Input	
Subnet mask:	The subnet mask serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in the network.	
	The control automatically obtains the subnet mask.	
Domain Name	Automatically procure DNS option:	
Server (DNS)	The TNC automatically obtains the IP address of the domain name server.	
	Manually configure the DNS option:	
	Manually enter the IP address of the server and the domain name.	
Default gateway	Automatically procure default gateway option:	
	The TNC automatically obtains the default gateway.	
	Manually configure the default gateway option:	
	Manually enter the IP address of the default gateway.	

Apply the changes with the OK button, or discard them with the Cancel button

The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

## NOTICE

#### **Caution: Malfunction!**

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

 Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



**Further information:** Conversational Programming User's Manual TNC 640 / TNC 620 / TNC 320 / TNC 128 as of software version 34059x-06

## CNC PILOT 640 beginning with software version 688946-01 (HEROS 5)

To integrate the control into the company network via DCHP, proceed as follows:

 Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

Switch to the Organization operating mode



- Press the Key soft key
- Enter the code number NET123
- Press the OK button



Press the Transfer soft key



Network Config.

- Press the Connections soft key
- Press the Network Config. soft key
- The control displays the pop-up window for the network settings.
- On the Computer name tab, enter the computer name under which the control is displayed in the company network
- Switch to the Interfaces tab
- Select the interface (eth0)
- Click the Configuration button
- > The control then displays the pop-up window for configuring the interface.
- Enter the following information into the pop-up window:

→ Machi	ine	🚯 smart.Turn	🎦 Tool edi	.tor	H	ŀ
Network : Computer nar	settings me Interfaces Internet	Ping/Routing NFS UID/GID DH	CP server   Sandbox   SM	B release		
Primary inter						
		You can configure the gateway only on ONE If recaired, the control	e domain, name, server an E interface. I also takes the computer	nd default		
		from this interface.	raiso takes the computer	names		
Usei	interface: eth0	-				
Computer na	ime 1527-1230521					
DEDIPCIS	627-1230521	The computer name se	rves as identification in the	network.		
		If no name is entered, th from the above selected	rves as identification in the the control tries to take the d interface.	names		
Host file						
Use hor	st file					
Nam	e of host file:					
	QK	Apply	OEM authoriza	tion	Cancel	
						I
QK	Apply	Gancel	Exchange Interface	Use Host file		OEM authorizati
→ Machi	ine	🚯 smart.Turn	🍴 Tool edi	.tor	8	ŀ
Network :	settings	Ping/Routing NFS UID/GID DH	an anna lan tau lan	D urbury [		
			CP server   Sandbox   SM	B release		
	e Connectors Configu	aration Sandbox				
X eth0						
X eth1		VBoxHostOnly				
	X116 DHCP-					
	X116 DHCP-					
	X116 DHCP					
	X116 DHCP-					
	X116 DHCP-					
	X116 DHCP-					
	X116 DHCP-					
	X116 DHCP-					
			Deactivate	Con	figuration	
IP forwarding	Activ		Desctivate	Con	figuration	
IP forwarding	Activ	80			figuration	
	Active	80	Deactivate at arrive at an interface car to other interfaces.		figuration	
	Active	80	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces.	n 	figuration	
	Active forwarding	atePackages th be forwards	at arrive at an interface car to other interfaces.	n 		
	Active forwarding	atePackages th be forwards	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza	n 	Gancel	OEM
Alow IF	Crowarding	etePeckagen the forwarded	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza	n zion		OEM authorizatik
QK	Active forwarding	ete Poologie II be tonvatiet Apply Carvet Active	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza	n tion	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	OEM authorizati
□ Alow IF QK ■ Macl	Activ     forwarding     SK     SK     Activ	ete Poologie II be tonvatiet Apply Carvet Active	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza	n tion	Gancel	
□ Alow IF QK → Macl	Active Interventing OK Active Active Confequencing an Solar	at Pickage to be broadd	at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza : Desctivate	n tion	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
□ Alow IF QK → Macl	Active Intervending OK Active Active Continuences on an Status	ete Poologie II be tonvatiet Apply Carvet Active	at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza : Desctivate	n tion	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
☐ Alow IF ΩK → Macl Network Computer n	Active towarding OK Active Configuration an State	ete	at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza : Desctivate	n tion	<u>Cancel</u> IP forwarding On/Off	
Alow IF	Active Torrending OK Confequencing and Solate Dimetrice active	ete	at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza : Desctivate	n tion	<u>Cancel</u> IP forwarding On/Off	
Alow IF	Activ	atPickage to be becauted to the becauted to be availed to be avai	at anves at an interface can boother interfaces. DEM Descrivate	n don Configuration	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
Alow IF	Active Towarding OK Confectorsting and States Othersters active States Name: ConcP.	atPickage to be becauted to the becauted to be availed to be avai	at an interface can to other interfaces. OEM authoriza : Desctivate	n tion	<u>Cancel</u> IP forwarding On/Off	
Alow IF	Active Tervandray OK Onf Active Deterly Deterly New Conf Active Deterly New Conf Active Deterly	atPickage to be becauted to the becauted to be availed to be avai	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces. Oth Descrivele (228 Save O Set the IP address m	fon Configuration	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
Alow IF	Active Tervandray OK Onf Active Detection Detection Profile Name Detection D	etPictaget th be towarded <u>Asysty</u>	at anive at an interface can bother interface. DBM authorization Descrivate (V26 Save Save	n too Configuration	Cancel IP tonwarding Onr/Off	
Alow IF	Active Towarding OK Confectorsting and Status Orderstand Status enform Status Orderstand Status enform Name ConCP Polide Name ConCP	ete Photosope in Low Activate Carecel Activate Carecel Activate Anterface Name (mice Phage connection LAN LAN LAN Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan	at arrive at an interface can to other interfaces. Oth Descrivele (228 Save O Set the IP address m	fon Configuration	Cancel IP forwarding On/Off	
Alow IF	Active 2 Investeday	ate Packages In Korneldon Second Activate Second Activa	a anive at an interface call to better restance. Descharter Descharter 2. Descharter 2. Descharter 2. Sour 5. Sour Safert IP addesa an anive Safert mask:	n configuration configuration arrushy 0. 0.	Cancel IP tonwarding Onr/Off	
Alow IF	Active 2 Investeday	ate Packages In Korneldon Second Activate Second Activa	a anive at an interface call to better matchice.	n Configuration Load aruady 0	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
Alow IF	Active 2 Investeday	ete Photosope in Low Activate Carecel Activate Carecel Activate Anterface Name (mice Phage connection LAN LAN LAN Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan Lan	a anno a no indexido ca is der andre and andre and andre and andre and andre and andre and	n ton Configuration accually 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
QK QK Haci Computer n Active Na X eth X eth	Active Termenting OK	Be      Packages the     be forwarded     Servin     Concel	a anive at an interface call to better matchice.	n Configuration Load aruady 0	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
QK QK Haci Computer n Active Na X eth X eth	Active Termenting OK	Be      Packages the     be forwarded     Servin     Concel	la ante a la interface cal lo del randomia construires	n Configuration Load accuration	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
QK QK Haci Computer n Active Na X eth X eth	Active Termenting OK	Be      Packages the     be forwarded     Servin     Concel	a anne a de interface ca to trete ventices. Deschore D	n aco Configuration Load an an book anually 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
QK QK Haci Computer n Active Na X eth X eth	Active Termenting OK	ate Packages In Korneldon Second Activate Second Activa	a anne a de interface ca to trete ventices. Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore Deschore D	n Configuration Load accuration	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
QK QK Haci Computer n Active Na X eth X eth	Active Termenting OK	Be      Packages the     be forwarded     Servin     Concel	anne a de interface ca la direce endecas. EXAMPLE A CONTRACTOR C	n aco Configuration Load an an book anually 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	
QK QK Haci Computer n Active Na X eth X eth	Active Termenting OK	ete	a anto a a interface ca bother nationale.	n fan Configuration Configuration arruady 0 configuration arruady 0 configuration arruady 0 configuration configur	Cancel           IP forwarding Ow/Off           Detere           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0	

Setting	Meaning	Input
Status	Interface active	Check box must be selected
Name:	Name of the interface	(Leave unchanged)
Plug connection:	Designation of the connector: X26	(Leave unchanged)
IP address	IP address of the control	Select the Automatically procure IP address(DHCP) option
Address:	The control automatically obtains the IP	address from a DHCP server.
Subnet mask:	The subnet mask serves to differentiate between the network ID and the host ID in th network.	
	The control automatically obtains the su	bnet mask.

Apply the changes with the OK button, or discard them with the Cancel button The control can have two network interfaces. Each network interface has its own IP address.

If two network interfaces exist, HEIDENHAIN controls preassign them as follows:

- X26 for integration into the local corporate network (connection to StateMonitor)
- X116 for the machine's internal use only



Refer to your machine manual.

The machine tool builder may define a different assignment of network interfaces than that predefined by HEIDENHAIN.

## NOTICE

#### **Caution: Malfunction!**

If you change the IP address of the machine's internal interface, then you interrupt the communication to other machine components and cause the control to malfunction.

 Do not change the settings for the machine's internally used interface



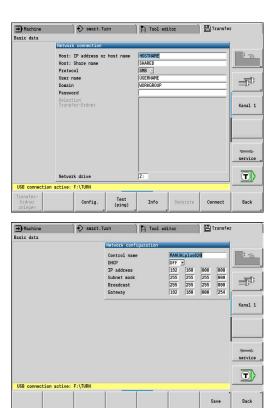
**Further information:** User's Manual CNC PILOT 640 starting with software version 68894x-04

# MANUALplus 620 starting with software versions 548328-05 and 54843x-01 (HEROS 5)

To integrate the control into the company network via DHCP, proceed as follows:

 Connect the control to the local company network via a network cable

	<ul> <li>Switch to the <b>Organization</b> operating mode</li> </ul>	
0	<ul> <li>Press the Key soft key</li> <li>Enter the code number NET123</li> <li>Press the OK button</li> </ul>	USB co
TRANSFER	<ul> <li>Press the Transfer soft key</li> </ul>	Ordne anleg
Con- nections	<ul> <li>Press the Connections soft key</li> </ul>	Basic d
Network	<ul> <li>Press the NET soft key</li> <li>The control displays the Network connection pop-up window.</li> </ul>	
Config.	<ul> <li>Press the Config. soft key</li> <li>The control displays the Network configuration pop-up window.</li> <li>Enter the information from the table below into the pop-up window</li> </ul>	USB co
Save	<ul> <li>Press the Save soft key</li> </ul>	



Setting	Meaning	Input
Control na	Mame under which the control is visible in the network	e.g. MANUALplus620
DHCP	OFF: The control has a fixed IP address in the network.	ON
	ON: The control automatically obtains the following data from a DHCP server:	
	IP address	
	Subnet mask	
	Broadcast	
	Gateway	
F	urther information: User's Manual MANUALplus 620	
В в.	tarting with software versions 548328-05 and 4843x-01	



Machine parameters

## **13.1 Control-specific machine parameters**

StateMonitor supports both the connection to HEIDENHAIN controls and to third-party controls.

When creating a new machine in StateMonitor, make sure to set the machine parameters required for the connection under **Machine-specific settings**. The available parameters depend on the type of control selected.

Further information: "Editing existing machines", Page 158

## **13.2 Parameters for HEIDENHAIN controls**

#### **Machine controls**

You can use StateMonitor with the following HEIDENHAIN controls:

Control	As of software version
iTNC 530	34049x-03
TNC 620	34056x-01
TNC 128	771841-01
TNC 320	340551-03
TNC 640	34059x-01
CNC PILOT 620	688945-01
CNC PILOT 640	68894x-01
MANUAL Plus 620	548328-05
Mill Plus IT	53895x-03, 73738x-01
Grind Plus IT	510060-04
Grind Plus 640	73502×-01

Depending on your software option, you can integrate other controls into StateMonitor using the following interfaces:

Interface	As of specification version
Modbus	Connect/Read
OPC UA	1.02.x
MTConnect	1.2

**Further information:** "Machines submenuMachines", Page 154 In order to use StateMonitor, the following prerequisites must be met:

The machine controls must be connected to the local company network

Further information: "Network integration", Page 199

 Option #18 (HEIDENHAIN DNC interface) enabled on the HEIDENHAIN control
 Further information: "Enabling Option 18", Page 197

or

The corresponding option must be enabled on other controls

#### Hardware

For StateMonitor, you need a PC or server that meets the following minimum requirements:

- Dual core processor
- USB interface or network USB hub (dongle for full version)
- 2 GB of RAM and 10 GB of hard disk space for the StateMonitor application (basic version for five machine controls)

For each further machine control, you additionally need:

- 0.25GB RAM
- 2GB hard disk space

Thus, if you want to connect e.g. 15 machine controls, the PC or server requires 30 GB of hard disk space and 3.5 GB of RAM for StateMonitor.



If you want to connect 20 machine controls or more, HEIDENHAIN recommends that you use a PC or server with quad core processor.

#### Software

For StateMonitor, a Windows operating system (Windows 7 or higher or Windows Server 2008 R2) is required.

For communication, the following Firewall settings are required:

- Enable TCP ports 19000 to 19034 for communication with the machine controls
- Enable TCP port 28001 for communication with a PC, tablet, or smartphone



Have an IT specialist configure the firewall to enable the required TCP ports.

#### SMTP server

To use the **Messenger** notification function in StateMonitor, you must connect to an SMTP server acting as the e-mail output server. Contact your e-mail provider for the details needed to access the SMTP server.



Create a separate e-mail address for StateMonitor

Further information: "Messenger settings submenu", Page 169

When creating a new machine with a HEIDENHAIN control, you can set the following machine parameters under **Machine-specific settings**:

- PLC password
- Override acquisition (only with iTNC 530)

#### Settings for PLC password

The PLC password is required for access to PLC information: If you permit access to the PLC, StateMonitor reads the status of the rapid traverse override and differentiates between NC blocks with feed rate and NC blocks with rapid traverse.



i

If you allow PLC access, the **Program analysis** chart will include the **FMAX** status bar.

Further information: "Program analysis chart", Page 83

With the goal of recording additional machine data,StateMonitor has only read access to the PLC.

If you select a control other than iTNC 530 under **Type**, the following **PLC password** options are available under **Machine-specific settings**:

Option	Meaning		
PLC Standard	The PLC is protected by the standard <b>PLC password</b> .		
	Access occurs automatically.		
No PLC	No access to the PLC.		
	If the machine manufacturer uses a PLC password of the day, then select <b>No PLC</b> . StateMonitor cannot then record any additional PLC information.		
OEM PLC	The machine manufacturer has issued his		

own PLC password (not with the iTNC 530). If applicable, request it from the machine manufacturer and enter it into the input field.

#### PLC Standard or OEM PLC options

If you select the **PLC Standard** option or the **OEM PLC** option, then, for the display of the machine statuses for the current block, StateMonitor differentiates between the following options:

- NC block with feed rate
- NC block with rapid traverse

#### NC block with feed rate is active

If an NC block with feed rate is active, then the display of the machine status is independent of the rapid-traverse override setting.

StateMonitor displays a yellow machine status when the feed rate override is = 0 %. The machine status becomes light green if the feed-rate override > 0 % and < 100 %. The machine status is dark green when the freed rate override is at  $\geq$  100 %.

Rapid-traverse override FMAX			Feed-rate override F ≥ 100%
FMAX = 0%	Machine status: Yellow	Machine status: Light green	Machine status: Dark green
0% < FMAX < 100%	Machine status: Yellow	Machine status: Light green	Machine status: Dark green
FMAX ≥ 100%	Machine status: Yellow	Machine status: Light green	Machine status: Dark green

#### NC block with rapid traverse is active

If an NC block with rapid traverse is active, then the display of the machine status is independent of the override setting of the feed rate.

StateMonitor displays a yellow machine status when the rapid traverse override is = 0 %. The machine status becomes light green if the rapid-traverse override > 0% and < 100%. If the rapid-traverse override is  $\geq$  100%, then the machine status becomes dark green.

Rapid-traverse override	Feed-rate override	Feed-rate override	Feed-rate override	
FMAX	F = 0%	0% < F < 100%	F ≥ 100%	
FMAX = 0%	Machine	Machine	Machine	
	status: Yellow	status: Yellow	status: Yellow	
0% < FMAX < 100%	Machine	Machine	Machine	
	status: Light	status: Light	status: Light	
	green	green	green	
FMAX ≥ 100%	Machine	Machine	Machine	
	status: Dark	status: Dark	status: Dark	
	green	green	green	

#### No PLC optionNo PLC

If you select the **No PLC** option, then StateMonitor displays the machine statuses as follows:

- The machine status is yellow if the feed-rate override in Program Run, Full Sequence operating mode = 0 %
- The machine status is light green if the feed-rate override > 0%
- The machine status is dark green if the overrides for freed rate and rapid traverse are ≥ 100%.

#### Example:

An NC block with **FMAX** is active, the override for rapid traverse = 0%, and the override for feed rate > 0%. The machine is then at standstill, but StateMonitor nevertheless displays a green machine status because the rapid traverse override setting is not recorded.

The table below shows which combinations of feed-rate override and rapid-traverse override lead to which machine status:

Rapid-traverse override FMAX	Feed-rate override F = 0%	Feed-rate override 0 % < F < 100%	Feed-rate override F ≥ 100%	
FMAX = 0 %	Machine Machine status: Yellow green		Machine status: Light green	
0% < FMAX < 100%	Machine status: Yellow	Machine status: Light green	Machine status: Light green	
FMAX ≥ 100%	Machine status: Yellow	Machine status: Light green	Machine status: Dark green	

#### Settings for Override acquisition (only with iTNC 530)

If you select the control iTNC 530 under **Type**, the following **Override acquisition** options are available under **Machine-specific settings**:

Option	Meaning
Standard HEIDEN- HAIN DNC	Select as default when creating a machine for the first time
Import of PLC words	Select only when the <b>Override settings</b> of the machine are incorrectly displayed in StateMonitor

## 13.3 Parameters for other controls

When connecting a different control, you need to manually assign the control signals to each machine status. For this purpose, StateMonitor uses a definition table that assigns one machine status each to the specific control signals.

When creating a new machine, make sure to set up this definition table with the corresponding parameters under **Machine-specific** settings.

#### Communication

The control signals from other controls are periodically polled by StateMonitor. The polling period duration can be configured.

#### **Signal parameters**

Despite the open standards of Modbus, OPC UA, and MTConnect, there numerous differences between the supported controls. For the necessary information regarding addresses,

comparison values, and data types, please refer to the documentation of the control or machine manufacturer.

The signal parameters evaluated by StateMonitor are identical for all non-HEIDENHAIN controls. From the transferred signal parameters, StateMonitor creates a status model for the affected machine.

#### Basic signal parameters for the status model:

Signal parameters	Meaning
Program running (PGM STARTED / PGM RUNNING)	Program has been started or is running
Program interrupted by error (ERROR)	An error occurred or is pending. If no <b>Program interrupted by user (PGM</b> <b>CANCELED)</b> is defined, <b>Program</b> <b>interrupted by error (ERROR)</b> will terminate the current program. This triggers the <b>Interrupted by error</b> <b>message</b> counter and generates a notification
Program successful- ly completed (PGM COMPLETED / END PGM)	Program execution has been complet- ed successfully. This triggers the <b>Fully executed</b> program counter and generates a notification

These three signal parameters must always be defined in order to support basic functionality such as the status lights and a basic machine status bar.

#### Additional signal parameters for the status model:

Signal parameters	Meaning
Machine online	Machine is online
Program stopped (PGM STOPPED)	Program execution has been inter- rupted, but the program remains active and can be resumed
Program interrupted by user (PGM CANCELED)	Program execution has been abort- ed, the program cannot be resumed. This triggers the program counter and generates the <b>Program interrupted</b> <b>by user</b> notification
Error acknowledged (ERROR CLEARED)	An error triggered with <b>Program</b> interrupted by error (ERROR) has been acknowledged. The program status changes to Interrupted. The program can be resumed with <b>Program running (PGM START-</b> ED / PGM RUNNING) or aborted with <b>Program interrupted by user (PGM</b> CANCELED)
Rapid traverse override setting in % (0 to 100)	Value in %
Feed rate override setting in % (0 to 150)	Value in %
Spindle override setting in % (0 to 150)	Value in %

Signal parameters	Meaning
Rapid traverse (FMAX) active	This value specifies whether, for status determination in a running program, the rapid-traverse override (FMAX = false) or the feed rate (FMAX = true) is evaluated
Operating mode: Automatic	This value is evaluated in the detail view only
Operating mode: Manual	This value is evaluated in the detail view only
Operating mode: Handwheel	This value is evaluated in the detail view only
Program name or number	This value can be evaluated in the program run times view. When changing to another program and restarting, the program counters for the current program will be reset to 0. If this parameter is not active, the default value will be "Program".

#### Validation

Once you save the definition table under **Machine-specific settings** by clicking the **Set up machine** button, the entries will be validated. This ensures that no typos etc. invalidate the assignment.

An error message will be displayed in the following cases:

- An address entry is missing (Boolean parameters and value parameters)
- Boolean parameters
  - Two Boolean values have the same address
  - Two signal parameters have the same data type, the same address, and the same value
- Value parameters
  - A signal parameter with a Text (string) data type or Number (number) does not have any value
  - Two signal parameters have the same address

### 13.4 Modbus connection parameters

#### **Connection settings**

In the definition table, you can set the following connection parameters for Modbus:

Port

Number of the network port over which the Modbus control can be reached.



Please refer to the documentation supplied by the control or machine manufacturer.

SIK:

Manual input

- NC software Manual input
- Polling interval

Internal for polling

#### Status parameter for mapping

In the expanded definition table (**Editing** button), you can map the control signals to status parameters (see "Parameters for other controls", Page 230).

The following information is required for the mapping of the status parameters:

#### Address type

Indicates the control's address space in which the memory address is located.



For the **COIL_OUTPUT** address type and **DIGITAL_INPUT** address type, Boolean values (0, 1) are usually entered under **Value**.

#### Data type

Indicates the value's format and thus also how many bits are to be read and processed.

Address

Indicates which location in the selected memory area of the value is to be read.

#### Value

Comparison values are necessary for the signals that flow directly into the status model of the control. Exceptions to this are numerical values such as override settings or texts, such as the program name, that do not need to be compared.

# 13.5 Example for connecting a control via Modbus

#### Reading out of the signals

For Modbus controls, StateMonitor is able to read out the signals directly at the control's input terminals. Between the analog inputs, usually a voltage between 0V and 10V is measured. For override values, the control must convert the voltage to a numerical value between 0 and 150. The result of this conversion can be read out from an address in the flag memory.

The following signals are present at the input terminals:

#### Input terminal assignment

Туре	Address	Meaning
Digital input	1	Machine is running
Digital input	2	Task interrupted by an error
Digital input	3	Task successfully completed
Digital input	4	Machine stopped
Analog input	23	Feed rate potentiometer
Analog input	25	Spindle potentiometer

#### Addresses in flag memory

Туре	Address	Meaning
Feed-rate override	42	Converted value for feed-rate override
Spindle override	43	Converted value for spindle override

#### Status model

The following table shows a status model for a control connected via Modbus

Parameter	Address type	Data type	Address	Value
Program running (PGM STARTED / PGM RUNNING)	DIGITAL_INPUT	BIT	1	1
Program interrupted by error (ERROR)	DIGITAL_INPUT	BIT	2	1
Program successfully completed (PGM COMPLET- ED / END PGM)	DIGITAL_INPUT	BIT	3	1
Program stopped (PGM STOPPED)	DIGITAL_INPUT	BIT	4	1
Feed rate override setting in % (0 to 150)	HOLDING_REGISTER	INT_16	42	
Spindle override setting in % (0 to 150)	HOLDING_REGISTER	INT_16	43	

## 13.6 OPC UA connection parameters

#### **Connection settings**

In the definition table, you can set the following connection parameters for OPC UA:

#### Default Namespace

Defines the default namespace to be used for the address

#### Security Mode

Manual input of the authentication, depending on the server.

6

If you use an authentication, then you must also select an application certificate. **Further information:** "Managing certificates (only for OPC UA)", Page 184

User

Manual input of the authentication data

Password

Manual input of the authentication data

SIK:

Manual input

- NC software
   Manual input
- Polling interval

Internal for polling

#### Status parameter for mapping

In the expanded definition table (**Editing** button), you can map the control signals to status parameters (see "Parameters for other controls", Page 230).

The following information is required for the mapping of the status parameters:

#### Parameter name space

For each signal parameter, you can define your own namespace. If no parameter-specific value is entered, then, for the namespace, StateMonitor uses the value under **Default Namespace**.

#### Address type

Indicates the control's address space in which the memory address is located.

#### Address

Indicates which location in the selected memory area of the value is to be read.

#### Data type

Defines, among other things, how the value comparison will be performed. StateMonitor differentiates between value parameters (**Text (string)** data type and **Number (number)** data type) and Boolean parameters (**Boolean value (0 or 1)**).

#### Value

Comparison values are necessary for the signals that flow directly into the status model of the control. Exceptions to this are numerical values such as override settings or texts, such as the program name, that do not need to be compared.

### **13.7 MTConnect connection parameters**

#### **Connection settings**

In the definition table, you can set the following connection parameters for MTConnect:

Port

Number of the network port over which the MTConnect service of the control can be reached.



Please refer to the documentation supplied by the control or machine manufacturer.

#### Prefix (http or https)

Defines whether the control provides encrypted machine data or not. For an encrypted connection, enter the value "https".

#### DeviceStream name

Unique identifier used to the find correct machine data among the XML files. With MTConnect, you can transmit information for multiple machines in a single request. Therefore, a unique identifier is required for distinction.



StateMonitor supports MT Connect schemas as of version 1.2.

SIK:

Manual input

NC software

Manual input

Polling interval

Internal for polling

After entering the data for IP address / DHCP, Port, and Prefix (http or https), you can test the connection by clicking the Current-Request button.

If the connection parameters are correct, then StateMonitor opens a new tab in the browser with the XML data that are reported by MTConnect.

#### Status parameter for mapping

In the expanded definition table (**Editing** button), you can map the control signals to status parameters (see "Parameters for other controls", Page 230).

The following information is required for the mapping of the status parameters:

#### Data type

Defines, among other things, how the value comparison will be performed. StateMonitor differentiates between value parameters (**Text (string)** data type and **Number (number)** data type) and Boolean parameters (**Boolean value (0 or 1)**).

#### DataltemId

States, as a reference, the ID attribute for the data values to be called.

#### Value

Comparison values are necessary for the signals that flow directly into the status model of the control. Exceptions to this are numerical values such as override settings or texts, such as the program name, that do not need to be compared.

# 13.8 Example for connecting a control via MTConnect

#### Provision of the machine parameters

For testing, the company MAZAK offers to provide a server that can be used to test MTConnect connections to a machine. For more details, please refer to http://mtconnect.mazakcorp.com. Based on this test server, the provision of machine parameters for MTConnect is shown.

Under the test server URL, there are two relevant addresses:

- Assignment of MTConnect data types to addresses: http://mtconnect.mazakcorp.com:5611/probe
- Current values in the control: http://mtconnect.mazakcorp.com:5611/current

To map status information, MTConnect uses the EVENT data type that is subdivided into further subtypes. The EXECUTION subtype maps the program execution status, the operating modes are included in the CONTROLLER_MODE subtype. By default, certain values are predefined for both types.

Values for the EXECUTION subtype (program execution):

- READY
- ACTIVE
- INTERRUPTED
- FEED_HOLD
- STOPPED
- OPTIONAL_STOP
- PROGRAM_STOPPED
- PROGRAM_COMPLETED

Values for the CONTROLLER_MODE subtype (operating modes):

- AUTOMATIC
- MANUAL
- MANUAL_DATA_INPUT
- SEMI_AUTOMATIC
- EDIT

In the XML file available at

http://mtconnect.mazakcorp.com:5611/probe, you can find out how the addresses of these types are defined on the control.

By searching for the string "execution" in the XML file, you can find the following variable definition:

<DataItem category="EVENT" id="exec" name="execution" type="EXECUTION"/>

This defines a variable of the EXECUTION type with the address

exec. The operating modes are defined here as follows:

<DataItem category="EVENT" id="mode" name="mode" type="CONTROLLER_MODE"/>

This information can be used to derive the status model. The

parameters for the program name and the override setting can be found in the same way. For the program name, the **PROGRAM** data type has been defined.

When searching for "program" in the XML file, you will find two definitions of this data type:

<DataItem category="EVENT" id="pgm" name="program" type="PROGRAM"/> <DataItem category="EVENT" id="spgm" name="subprogram" subType="x:SUB" type="PROGRAM"/> From the name, you can see that in the first case, the definition refers to the actual program name and in the second case, to the name of the subprogram. In this example, the parameter with the ID pgm is used.

For the feed rate potentiometers, the PATH_FEEDRATE_OVERRIDE data type with the RAPID and PROGRAMMED subtypes is defined for rapid traverse and feed rate. For spindle override, the ROTARY_VELOCITY_OVERRIDE data type is used.

#### Identifiers for machine data

With MTConnect, you can transmit information for multiple machines in a single request. For this reason, a unique machine data identifier is required.

The corresponding values can be found in the XML data that is accessible as follows:

- By clicking the Current-Request button after having specified the IP address / DHCP, Port, and Prefix (http or https)
- By entering the following address directly in the address line of your browser: http://IP address / DHCP:Port/current

If the connection parameters are correct, StateMonitor opens a new tab in the web browser that shows the XML data reported by MTConnect.

By searching for "DeviceStream", you will find an entry similar to the following:

<DeviceStream name="CUT" uuid="002">

The name attribute of the DeviceStream item indicates which machine data will be queried on the MTConnect server.

#### Status model

The following table shows a status model for a control connected via MTConnect.

Parameter	Data type	Address	Value
Program running (PGM STARTED / PGM RUNNING)	Text	exec	ACTIVE
Program interrupted by error (ERROR)	Text	exec	INTERRUPTED
Program successfully completed (PGM COMPLET- ED / END PGM)	Text	exec	PROGRAM_COMPLETED
Program stopped (PGM STOPPED)	Text	exec	PROGRAM_STOPPED
Program interrupted by user (PGM CANCELED)	Text	exec	OPTIONAL_STOP
Rapid traverse override setting in % (0 to 100)	Number	pfr	
Feed rate override setting in % (0 to 150)	Number	pfo	
Spindle override setting in % (0 to 150)	Number	sovr	
Operating mode: Automatic	Text	mode	AUTOMATIC
Operating mode: Manual	Text	mode	MANUAL
Program name or number	Text	pgm	



Help, tips and tricks

## 14.1 Operating Instructions in StateMonitor

You can call the PDF file with the Operating Instructions of StateMonitor via the **Help** entry in the menu list.

The Operating Instructions are available in various languages. The current version can be downloaded in the downloaded from **www.heidenhain.de**.

To update the Operating Instructions, proceed as follows:

- Download the current version in the desired language from www.heidenhain.de
- Rename the downloaded PDF file in StateMonitorHelpFile_xx.pdf with xx as a place placeholder for the ISO language abbreviation (e.g., 1228892-01-A-04_it.pdf in StateMonitorHelpFile_it.pdf)
- Move the PDF file in the installation folder of StateMonitor to the Documentation folder
- ▶ If applicable, replace the already existing file with the new file
- > The current Operating Instructions are available in the desired language under **Help**

## 14.2 Special cases

On some controls, certain software versions may lead to special cases or conditions.

Control	Software version	Special feature	Solution
iTNC 530	340492-06 340492-07	The override settings of the machine are not transmitted in detail to State- Monitor.	<ul> <li>Tick the box next to Import of PLC words in the Settings menu, Machines</li> </ul>
		StateMonitor always shows the <b>Productive</b> machine status in light green, no matter whether the feed-rate override is larger than or equal to 100% or less.	submenu, <b>Machine-specific</b> settings
TNC 620	340560-01 to 340560-04	The operating modes are not displayed correctly in StateMonitor	<ul> <li>Update the control software to version 340560-05</li> </ul>

## 14.3 Any questions?

If you have any questions on the installation or operation of StateMonitor:

- First read the installation and operating instructions for the software
- ► Contact the HEIDENHAIN NC programming helpline:
  - Per e-mail at: service.nc-pgm@heidenhain.de
  - By phone at: +49 8669 31-3103

## HEIDENHAIN

Technical support Measuring systems				
E-mail: service.ms-	-supp	ort@heidenhain.de		
NC support	3	+49 8669 31-3101		
E-mail: service.nc-support@heidenhain.de				
NC programming	3	+49 8669 31-3103		
E-mail: service.nc-pgm@heidenhain.de				
PLC programming	3	+49 8669 31-3102		
E-mail: service.plc@heidenhain.de				
APP programming	6	+49 8669 31-3106		
E-mail: service.app@heidenhain.de				

www.heidenhain.de